

Draft

Plan Formulation Appendix

Shasta Lake Water Resources Investigation, California

Prepared by:

**United States Department of the Interior
Bureau of Reclamation
Mid-Pacific Region**



**U.S. Department of the Interior
Bureau of Reclamation**

June 2013

Contents

| | | |
|------------------|--|-------------------------------------|
| Chapter 1 | Introduction..... | 1-1 |
| | Plan Formulation Process | 1-1 |
| | Water and Related Resources Problems, Needs, and Opportunities | 1-4 |
| | Anadromous Fish Survival | 1-4 |
| | Water Supply Reliability..... | 1-7 |
| | Ecosystem Resources..... | 1-13 |
| | Flood Management | 1-16 |
| | Hydropower | 1-17 |
| | Recreation | 1-17 |
| | Water Quality..... | 1-18 |
| | Existing and Future Resources Conditions in Study Area..... | 1-18 |
| | Likely Future Conditions | 1-19 |
| | Planning Objectives | 1-22 |
| | National Planning Objectives | 1-22 |
| | SLWRI-Specific Planning Objectives | 1-23 |
| | Planning Constraints and Other Considerations | 1-24 |
| | Planning Constraints..... | 1-24 |
| | Statewide Water Operation Considerations..... | Error! Bookmark not defined. |
| | Other Planning Considerations | 1-28 |
| | Criteria | 1-29 |
| Chapter 2 | Management Measures..... | 2-1 |
| | Measures to Address Primary Planning Objectives..... | 2-2 |
| | Increase Anadromous Fish Survival | 2-2 |
| | Increase Water Supply Reliability | 2-27 |
| | Measures to Address Secondary Planning Objectives..... | 2-47 |
| | Conserve, Restore, and Enhance Ecosystem Resources..... | 2-47 |
| | Reduce Flood Damage..... | 2-62 |
| | Develop Additional Hydropower Generation..... | 2-66 |
| | Maintain and Increase Recreation Opportunities..... | 2-67 |
| | Maintain or Improve Water Quality | 2-69 |
| | Measures Summary..... | 2-69 |
| Chapter 3 | Shasta Dam and Reservoir Enlargement Scenarios | 3-1 |
| | Rationale for 18.5-Foot Dam Raise | 3-2 |
| | Dam Raise Scenarios | 3-3 |
| | Low-Level Raise – 6.5 Feet | 3-3 |
| | Expanded Low-Level Raise – 18.5 Feet..... | 3-10 |
| | Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30 Feet..... | 3-12 |
| | Intermediate-Level Raise – 102.5 Feet | 3-13 |
| | High-Level Raise – 202.5 Feet | 3-16 |
| | Initial Screening..... | 3-17 |

| | | |
|------------------|--|------------|
| Chapter 4 | Concept Plans | 4-1 |
| | Overview of Concept Plan Features | 4-1 |
| | Plans Focused on Anadromous Fish Survival | 4-4 |
| | AFS-1– Increase Cold-Water Assets with Shasta Operating Pool Raise (6.5 Feet) | 4-4 |
| | AFS-2 – Increase Minimum Anadromous Fish Flow with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 Feet)..... | 4-6 |
| | AFS-3 – Increase Minimum Anadromous Fish Flow and Restore Aquatic Habitat with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 Feet) | 4-8 |
| | Plans Focused on Water Supply Reliability | 4-10 |
| | WSR-1 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 Feet) | 4-10 |
| | WSR-2 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 Feet) | 4-11 |
| | WSR-3 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (High Level) | 4-12 |
| | WSR-4 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 Feet) and Conjunctive Water Management | 4-14 |
| | Plans Focused on Combined Objectives..... | 4-15 |
| | CO-1 – Increase Anadromous Fish Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet) | 4-16 |
| | CO-2 – Increase Anadromous Fish Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet)..... | 4-17 |
| | CO-3 – Increase Anadromous Fish Flow/Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet)..... | 4-18 |
| | CO-4 – Multipurpose with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet) | 4-20 |
| | CO-5 – Multipurpose with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet) | 4-22 |
| | Summary Comparison of Concept Plans | 4-24 |
| | Effectiveness | 4-24 |
| | Concept Alternatives Carried Forward | 4-33 |
| Chapter 5 | Comprehensive Plans | 5-1 |
| | Overview of Comprehensive Plans..... | 5-1 |
| | Development and Refinement of Comprehensive Plans | 5-1 |
| | Comprehensive Plans in the Draft Feasibility Report and Supporting Documents | 5-2 |
| | Refinement of Comprehensive Plans for the DEIS | 5-8 |
| | No-Action Alternative | 5-12 |
| | Anadromous Fish Survival | 5-13 |
| | Water Supply Reliability..... | 5-14 |
| | Ecosystem Resources, Flood Management, Hydropower Generation, Recreation, and Water Quality..... | 5-14 |
| | Comprehensive Plans..... | 5-15 |
| | Management Measures Common to All Comprehensive Plans | 5-16 |
| | Environmental Commitments Common to All Comprehensive Plans | 5-18 |
| | Major Components of Comprehensive Plans | 5-27 |

Comprehensive Plan 1 (CP1) – 6.5-Foot Dam Raise, Anadromous Fish
 Survival and Water Supply Reliability 5-32

Comprehensive Plan 2 (CP2) –12.5-Foot Dam Raise, Anadromous Fish and
 Water Supply Reliability..... 5-62

Comprehensive Plan 3 (CP3) – 18.5-Foot Dam Raise, Agricultural Water
 Supply Reliability and Anadromous Fish Survival 5-72

Comprehensive Plan 4 (CP4) – 18.5-Foot Dam Raise, Anadromous Fish Focus
 with Water Supply Reliability 5-83

Comprehensive Plan 5 (CP5) – 18.5-Foot Dam Raise – Combination Plan 5-96

Potential Benefits and Costs of Comprehensive Plans 5-109

Estimated Costs for Comprehensive Plans 5-109

Summary of Potential Benefits of Comprehensive Plans 5-109

Chapter 6 References..... 6-1

Tables

Table 1-1. Estimated Water Demands, Supplies, and Shortages Under Existing
 Conditions..... 1-9

Table 1-2. Estimated Water Demands, Supplies, and Shortages for 2030¹ 1-10

Table 1-3. Estimated Annual Change in Water Demand in California for 2050
 Considering Different Population Growth Scenarios 1-11

Table 1-4. Impact of CVPIA on CVP Deliveries 1-13

Table 1-5. Summary of Applicable Laws, Policies, Plans, and Permits Potentially
 Affecting Project..... 1-26

Table 2-1. Management Measures Addressing the Primary Planning Objective of
 Increasing Anadromous Fish Survival..... 2-3

Table 2-2. Potential Gravel Mine Restoration Sites Along the Sacramento River..... 2-19

Table 2-3. Management Measures Addressing the Primary Planning Objective of
 Increasing Water Supply Reliability 2-29

Table 2-4. Management Measures Addressing the Secondary Planning Objective of
 Conserving, Restoring, and Enhancing Ecosystem Resources..... 2-49

Table 2-5. Management Measures Addressing the Secondary Planning Objectives of
 Reducing Flood Damage, Developing Additional Hydropower Generation,
 Maintaining and Increasing Recreation, and Maintaining or Improving
 Water Quality..... 2-63

Table 2-6. Measures Retained to Address the Primary Planning Objectives 2-70

Table 2-7. Measures Retained to Address the Secondary Planning Objectives 2-71

Table 3-1. Shasta Dam and Reservoir Enlargement Features..... 3-4

Table 3-2. Reservoir Infrastructure Impacts and Actions for Elevations 1,070 – 1,280¹ 3-5

Table 3-3. CVP/SWP System Yield Increase (2003 Estimates)..... 3-7

Table 3-4. First and Annual Costs for Dam Raise Options 3-8

Table 3-5. Water Supply Unit Cost Summary (2003 conditions)..... 3-9

Table 3-6. Summary Comparison of Shasta Dam Raise Scenarios (2003 Analysis) 3-18

| | |
|--|-------|
| Table 4-1. Summary of Concept Plan Features | 4-2 |
| Table 4-2. Shasta Dam and Lake Changes – Dam Raise Scenarios | 4-3 |
| Table 4-3. Summary Comparison of Concept Plans..... | 4-25 |
| Table 4-4. Summary of Estimated Costs and Benefits for Concept Plans..... | 4-30 |
| Table 5-1. Scenarios Considered for Cold-Water Storage as Part of Fish Focus Plan..... | 5-4 |
| Table 5-2. Scenarios Considered to Augment Flows as Part of Fish Focus Plan..... | 5-6 |
| Table 5-3. Cost Effectiveness Screening for Efficiency of Annualized Preliminary Combined Scenarios | 5-7 |
| Table 5-4. Scenarios Considered for Refinement of DEIS Comprehensive Plans | 5-9 |
| Table 5-5. Physical Features of Comprehensive plans | 5-28 |
| Table 5-6. Increases in CVP and SWP Water Deliveries for Comprehensive Plans..... | 5-40 |
| Table 5-7. Summary of Additional Broad Public Benefits for SLWRI Comprehensive Plans..... | 5-42 |
| Table 5-8. Summary of Proposed Mitigation Measures for Comprehensive Plans..... | 5-43 |
| Table 5-9. Estimated Construction and Average Annual Costs1 | 5-110 |
| Table 5-10. Summary of Potential Features and Benefits of SLWRI Comprehensive Plans (Compared to No-Action Alternative) | 5-111 |

Figures

| | |
|---|------|
| Figure 1-1. Plan Formulation Phases | 1-2 |
| Figure 1-2. Chinook Salmon Historic Spawning Populations in the Sacramento River | 1-5 |
| Figure 1-3. Shasta Lake Water Resources Investigation Primary Study Area – Shasta Lake Area and Sacramento River from Shasta Dam to Red Bluff Pumping Plant | 1-20 |
| Figure 2-1. Conceptual Schematic of Restoration Actions as Enhancement Versus Restoration Actions as Mitigation | 2-2 |
| Figure 2-2. Measures Retained to Address Primary Planning Objective – Anadromous Fish Survival | 2-18 |
| Figure 2-3. Example of Abandoned Gravel Mine with Isolated Pits (left side of photo)..... | 2-20 |
| Figure 2-4. TCD Located on Upstream Face of Shasta Dam | 2-23 |
| Figure 2-5. Shasta Dam Temperature Control Device..... | 2-24 |
| Figure 2-6. Measures Retained to Address Secondary Planning Objective – Ecosystem Restoration | 2-57 |
| Figure 3-1. Elevation Sketch Showing the South End of the Pit River Bridge with Respect to the Existing and Increased Full Pool Elevation at Shasta Lake..... | 3-2 |
| Figure 3-2. Estimated Number of Structures Affected by Increasing the Height of Shasta Dam and Reservoir..... | 3-6 |
| Figure 3-3. Estimated First Cost for Various Shasta Dam Raises at 2003 Price Levels | 3-8 |
| Figure 3-4. Plot of Total Storage and Water Supply Reliability Yield Unit Cost (2003 price levels) for Various Increases of Shasta Dam Raise | 3-10 |
| Figure 3-5. Shasta Lake Maximum Area of Inundation for 100-foot and 200-foot Dam Raise Options..... | 3-14 |

Figure 4-1. Potential Locations Along Sacramento River Where Abandoned Gravel Mines Could Be Considered for Restoration..... 4-9

Figure 4-2. Pit 7 Dam, Located on the Pit River Upstream from Shasta Lake, is 200 Feet High 4-13

Figure 4-3. Potential Ecosystem Restoration Features in the Shasta Lake Area 4-21

Figure 5-1. Combinations Considered Between Increased Storage Dedicated to Either Water Supply Reliability or Increasing Cold-Water Supply for Fisheries 5-5

Figure 5-2. Cost-Effectiveness Assessment of Combined Scenarios 5-7

Figure 5-3. Major Features Common to All Comprehensive Plans..... 5-31

Figure 5-4. Enlarged Shasta Reservoir Area Capacity Relationships..... 5-34

Figure 5-5. Simulated Exceedence Probability Relationship of Maximum Annual Storage in Shasta Lake for a Future Level of Development..... 5-38

Figure 5-6. Simulated Shasta Reservoir Storage from 1972 to 2003 for the No-Action Alternative and CP1..... 5-38

Figure 5-7. Comparison of Increased CVP and SWP Water Deliveries by Year Type for Comprehensive Plans 5-39

Figure 5-8. Simulated Maximum Lake Shore Area Inundation for Dam Raises of 6.5 Feet and 18.5 Feet..... 5-54

Figure 5-9. McCloud River Maximum Inundation for 6.5-foot and 18.5-foot Dam Raises 5-56

Figure 5-10. Percent Change in Simulated Flows at Bend Bridge for Average, Dry, and Wet Year Conditions..... 5-58

Figure 5-11. Simulated Sacramento River Flow Below Keswick Dam in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action, CP1, and CP4 5-59

Figure 5-12. Sacramento River Flow Below Red Bluff Pumping Plant in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action, CP1, and CP4 5-60

Figure 5-13. Sacramento River Flow Below Stony Creek in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action, CP1, and CP4..... 5-61

Figure 5-14. Simulated Shasta Reservoir Storage from 1972 to 2003 for the No-Action Alternative and CP2..... 5-66

Figure 5-15. Simulated Sacramento River Flow Below Keswick Dam in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP2 5-69

Figure 5-16. Sacramento River Flow Below Red Bluff Pumping Plant in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP2 5-70

Figure 5-17. Sacramento River Flow Below Stony Creek in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP2..... 5-71

Figure 5-18. Minimum Clearance for Boat Traffic at Pit River Bridge, Full Pool with 18.5-foot Dam Raise 5-73

Figure 5-19. Simulated Shasta Reservoir Storage from 1972 to 2003 for the No-Action Alternative and CP3..... 5-77

Figure 5-20. Simulated Sacramento River Flow Below Keswick Dam in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP3 5-80

| | |
|---|-------|
| Figure 5-21. Simulated Sacramento River Flow Below Red Bluff Pumping Plant in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP3..... | 5-81 |
| Figure 5-22. Simulated Sacramento River Flow Below Stony Creek in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP3..... | 5-82 |
| Figure 5-23. Potential Sacramento River Habitat Restoration Areas | 5-86 |
| Figure 5-24. Percent Change in Production of Chinook Salmon for CP4..... | 5-89 |
| Figure 5-25. Simulated Shasta Reservoir Storage from 1972 to 2003 for the No-Action Alternative and CP4..... | 5-94 |
| Figure 5-26. Simulated Shasta Reservoir Storage from 1972 to 2003 for the No-Action Alternative and CP5..... | 5-103 |
| Figure 5-27. Simulated Sacramento River Flow Below Keswick Dam in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP5 | 5-106 |
| Figure 5-28. Simulated Sacramento River Flow Below Red Bluff Pumping Plant in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP5..... | 5-107 |
| Figure 5-29. Simulated Sacramento River Flow Below Stony Creek in Wet, Above- and Below-Normal, and Dry and Critical Years for No-Action and CP5..... | 5-108 |

Abbreviations and Acronyms

| | |
|---------------|--|
| 2004 OCAP | <i>2004 Long-Term CVP Operations Criteria and Plan</i> |
| 2004 OCAP BA | <i>2004 Long-Term CVP and SWP OCAP Biological Assessment</i> |
| AFS | anadromous fish survival |
| Bay-Delta | San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta |
| BDCP | Bay-Delta Conservation Plan |
| BLM | Bureau of Land Management |
| BO | Biological Opinion |
| CA | California Aqueduct |
| CALFED | CALFED Bay-Delta Program |
| CDFW | California Department of Fish and Wildlife |
| cfs | cubic feet per second |
| CO | combined objectives |
| CP | Comprehensive Plan |
| CVP | Central Valley Project |
| CVPIA | Central Valley Project Improvement Act |
| CVPM | Central Valley Production Model |
| Delta | Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta |
| DEIS | Draft Environmental Impact Statement |
| DHCCP | Delta Habitat Conservation and Conveyance Plan |
| DMC | Delta-Mendota Canal |
| DMC/CA | Delta Mendota Canal/California Aqueduct |
| DWR | California Department of Water Resources |
| EIS | Environmental Impact Statement |
| elevation xxx | elevation in feet above mean sea level |
| EQ | Environmental Quality |
| ESA | Endangered Species Act |
| FEIS | Final Environmental Impact Statement |
| GIS | geographic information system |
| GWh | gigawatt-hour |
| I-5 | Interstate 5 |
| IDC | interest during construction |
| IMPLAN | IMpact analysis for PLANning |
| M&I | municipal and industrial |

Shasta Lake Water Resources Investigation
Plan Formulation Appendix

| | |
|-------------|--|
| MAF | million acre-feet |
| MW | megawatt |
| NED | National Economic Development |
| NEPA | National Environmental Policy Act |
| NMFS | National Marine Fisheries Service |
| NODOS | North-of-the-Delta Offstream Storage |
| NRA | National Recreation Area |
| O&M | operations and maintenance |
| OCAP | Operations Criteria and Plan |
| P&G | Economic and Environmental Principles and Guidelines for Water and Related Land Resources Implementation Studies |
| PG&E | Pacific Gas and Electric Company |
| PMF | Probable Maximum Flood |
| RBPP | Red Bluff Pumping Plant |
| Reclamation | U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation |
| RED | Regional Economic Development |
| ROD | Record of Decision |
| RPA | reasonable and prudent alternative |
| SCRB | separable costs-remaining benefits |
| SLWRI | Shasta Lake Water Resources Investigation |
| SRTTG | Sacramento River Temperature Task Group |
| STNF | Shasta-Trinity National Forest |
| SWP | State Water Project |
| SWRCB | State Water Resources Control Board |
| TAF | thousand acre-feet |
| TCD | temperature control device |
| UPRR | Union Pacific Railroad |
| USACE | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers |
| USFS | U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service |
| USFWS | U.S. Department of the Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service |
| WSR | water supply reliability |

1 Chapter 1

2 Introduction

3 This appendix describes the iterative plan formulation and evaluation process
4 for the Shasta Lake Water Resources Investigation (SLWRI) by the U.S.
5 Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation (Reclamation), Mid-Pacific
6 Region. This chapter defines planning objectives, constraints, and criteria.
7 Subsequent chapters describe management measures, representative sets of
8 concept plans, and development of comprehensive plans. Information presented
9 in this appendix is used to support discussions in the Draft Environmental
10 Impact Statement (DEIS).

11 Plan Formulation Process

12 Consistent with the National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA), the plan
13 formulation process for Federal water resources studies is identified in the
14 *Economic and Environmental Principles and Guidelines for Water and Related*
15 *Land Resources Implementation Studies* (P&G) (WRC 1983) and consists of the
16 following deliberate and iterative steps:

- 17 • Identifying existing and projected future resources conditions likely to
18 occur in a study area.
- 19 • Defining water resources problems, needs, and opportunities to be
20 addressed, and developing planning objectives, constraints, and criteria.
- 21 • Identifying potential management measures and formulating potential
22 alternative plans to meet planning objectives within planning
23 constraints.
- 24 • Comparing and evaluating alternative plans.
- 25 • Selecting a plan for recommendation to decision makers for
26 implementation or no action.

27 For the SLWRI, this iterative process was separated into multiple phases as
28 illustrated in Figure 1-1 and described below:

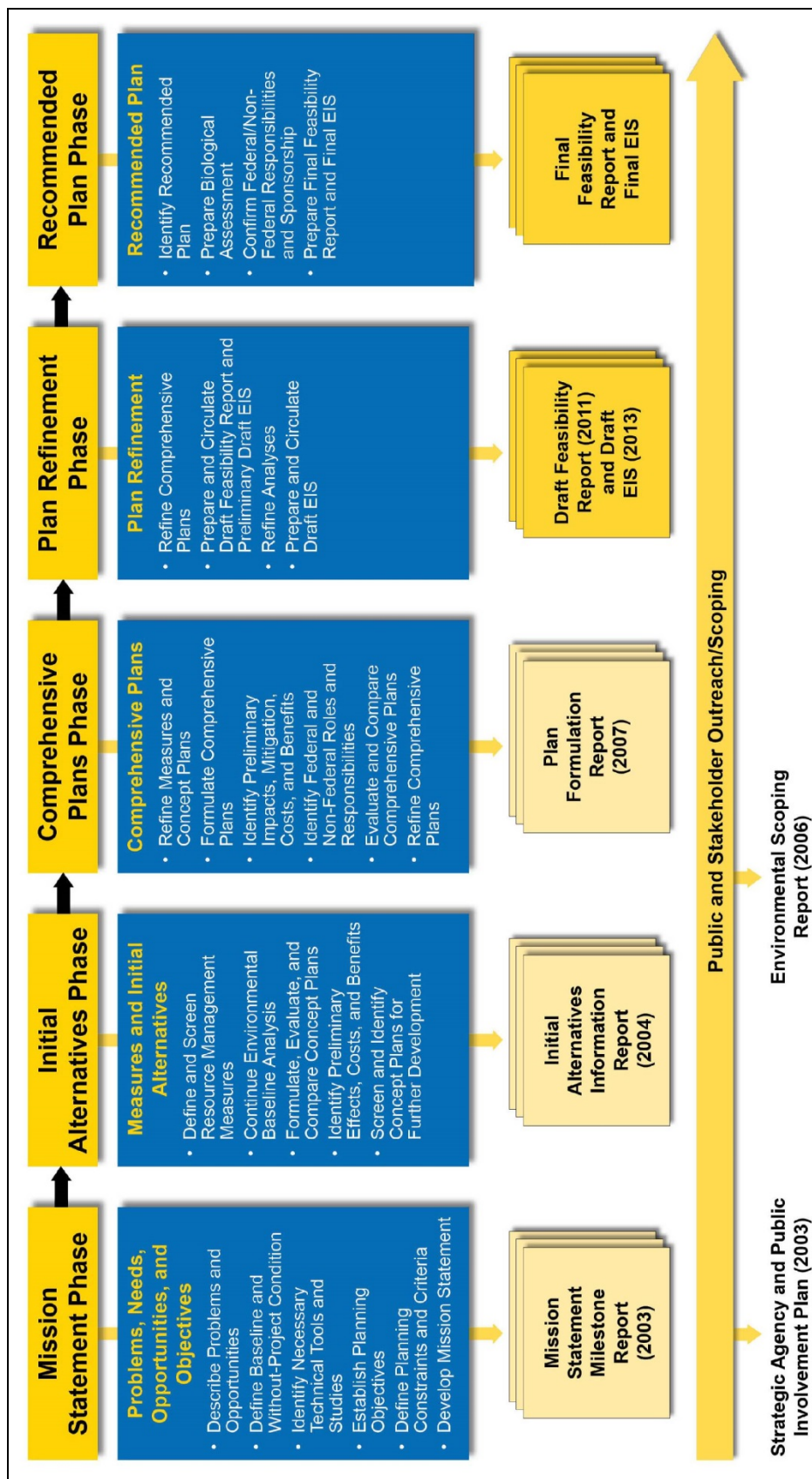


Figure 1-1. Plan Formulation Phases

- 1 • **Mission Statement Phase** – This study phase consisted of projecting
2 without-project future conditions, defining resulting resource problems
3 and needs, defining a specific set of planning objectives, and
4 identifying constraints and criteria for addressing the planning
5 objectives. The results of this phase of study were included in the 2003
6 *SLWRI Mission Statement Milestone Report* (Reclamation 2003a).

- 7 • **Initial Alternatives Phase** – This phase included developing a number
8 of potential management measures, or project actions or features
9 designed to address planning objectives. These measures were then
10 used to formulate a set of plans that were conceptual in scope (concept
11 plans). These initial plans were evaluated and compared to the
12 planning objectives to identify the most suitable plans for further
13 development. The results of this phase of study were included in the
14 2004 *SLWRI Initial Alternatives Information Report* (Reclamation
15 2004a).

- 16 • **Comprehensive Plans Phase** – The measures and concept plans
17 carried forward were further refined and developed with more
18 specificity to formulate comprehensive plans to address the planning
19 objectives. These plans were then evaluated and compared. The
20 results of this phase of the study were included in the 2007 *SLWRI Plan*
21 *Formulation Report* (Reclamation 2007).

- 22 • **Plan Refinement Phase** – This phase focuses on further refinement of
23 the comprehensive plans to identify a plan suitable to be recommended
24 for implementation. This phase includes preparing and circulating a
25 Draft Feasibility Report, which was completed in November 2011 and
26 released to the public in February 2012, and DEIS.

- 27 • **Recommended Plan Phase** – The next phase of the SLWRI planning
28 process will focus on identifying a recommended plan, preparing a
29 Biological Assessment, and confirming Federal and non-Federal
30 responsibilities. This phase will conclude with the preparation and
31 processing of a Final Feasibility Report, to support a Federal decision,
32 and a Final Environmental Impact Statement (EIS).

33 Public and stakeholder outreach was performed concurrently with the above
34 phases, as shown in Figure 1-1. Major reports include the *SLWRI Strategic*
35 *Agency Public Involvement Plan*, published in 2003 (Reclamation), and the
36 *SLWRI Environmental Scoping Report*, published in 2006 (Reclamation).

37 The first three phases have been completed. As shown in Figure 1-1, emphasis
38 in these planning phases changes as the Feasibility Study proceeds. In the
39 beginning, the emphasis is on defining problems, needs, and opportunities, and
40 inventorying and forecasting conditions in the study area to help define a
41 specific set of planning objectives. In time, however, emphasis shifts to

1 defining water management measures and ways of combining the most
2 appropriate of these measures into concept plans. Later, emphasis shifts to
3 formulating, evaluating, and comparing complete and comprehensive
4 alternatives. Still later in the study, emphasis is on defining and describing a
5 recommended plan and preparing a Feasibility Report. During each study
6 phase, it is important to review and revise, if necessary, previous decisions and
7 future study planning objectives.

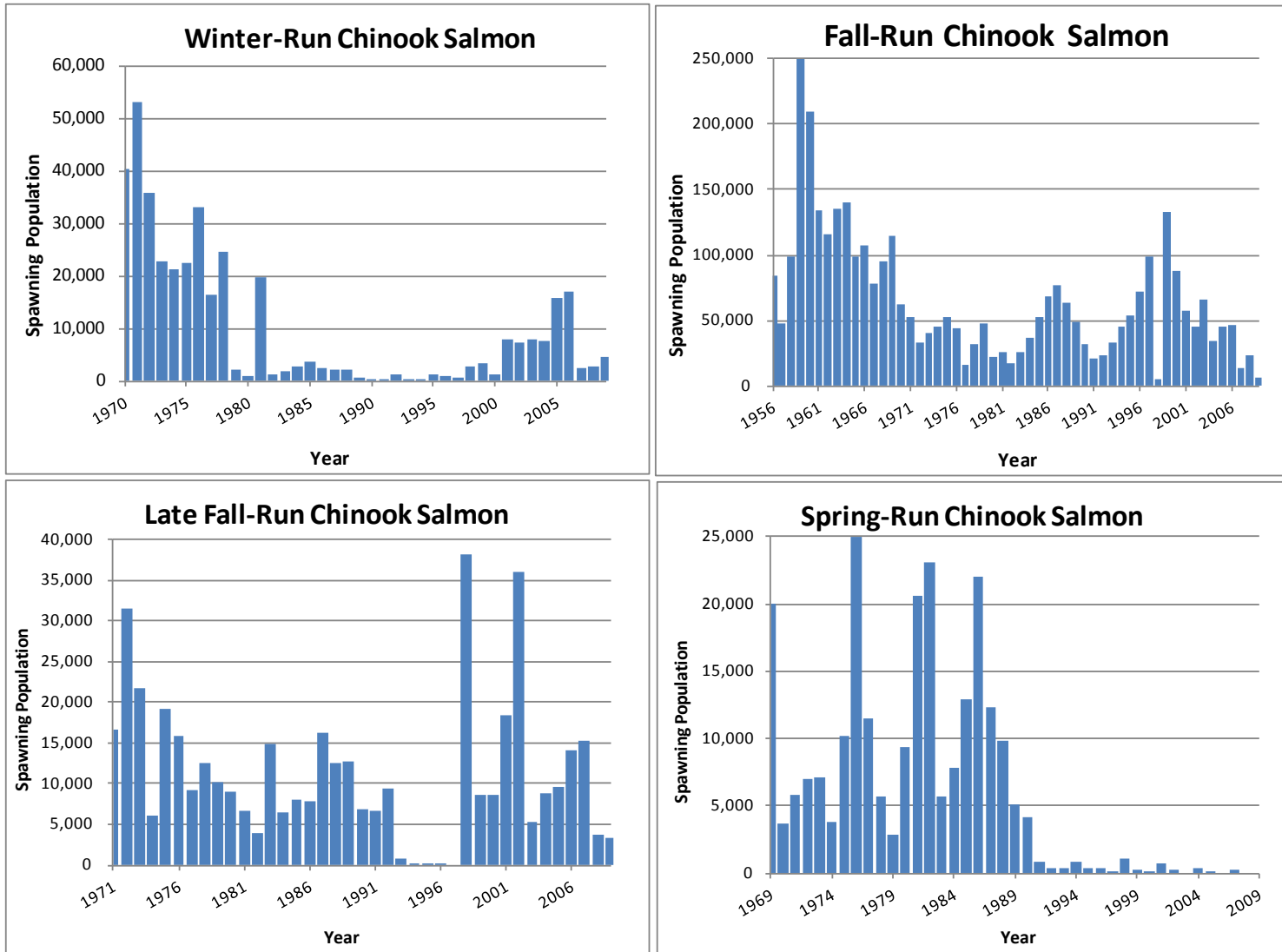
8 **Water and Related Resources Problems, Needs, and** 9 **Opportunities**

10 Based on the overall feasibility study authority, and concerns expressed about
11 existing and likely future water and related resources issues, following is a
12 description of identified major water resources problems, needs, and
13 opportunities in the primary SLWRI study area.

14 **Anadromous Fish Survival**

15 The Sacramento River system supports four separate runs of Chinook salmon:
16 fall-, late fall-, winter-, and spring-run. The adult populations of the four runs of
17 salmon and other important fish species that spawn in the upper Sacramento
18 River have declined considerably over the last 40 years (Figure 1-2) (CDFW
19 2010). Several fish species in the upper Sacramento River have been listed as
20 endangered or threatened, as defined by the Federal Endangered Species Act
21 (ESA): Sacramento River winter-run Chinook salmon (endangered), Central
22 Valley spring-run Chinook salmon (threatened), Central Valley steelhead
23 (threatened), and the Southern Distinct Population Segment of North American
24 green sturgeon (threatened). Two of these species also are listed as endangered
25 or threatened, as defined by the California Endangered Species Act (CESA):
26 Sacramento River winter-run Chinook salmon (endangered) and Central Valley
27 spring-run Chinook salmon (threatened).

28 Numerous factors have contributed to these declines, including unstable water
29 temperature, loss of historic spawning areas and suitable rearing habitat, water
30 diversions from the Sacramento River, drought conditions, reduction in suitable
31 spawning gravels, fluctuations in river flows, toxic acid mine drainage, high
32 rates of predation, unsustainable fish harvests, and unsuitable ocean conditions.
33 One of the most significant environmental factors affecting Chinook salmon is
34 unsuitable water temperature in the Sacramento River (NMFS 2009b). Water
35 temperatures that are too high or, less commonly, too low, can be detrimental to
36 the various life stages of Chinook salmon. Elevated water temperatures can
37 negatively impact holding and spawning adults, egg viability and incubation,
38 preemergent fry, and rearing juveniles and smolts, significantly diminishing the
39 next generation of returning spawners. Stress caused by high water
40 temperatures also may reduce the resistance of fish to parasites, disease, and
41 pollutants.



Source: CDFW, 2010

Figure 1-2. Chinook Salmon Historic Spawning Populations in the Sacramento River

1 Releases of cold water stored behind Shasta Dam can significantly improve
2 seasonal water temperatures in the Sacramento River for anadromous fish
3 during critical periods. The 2009 National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS)
4 Public Draft Recovery Plan states that prolonged droughts depleting the cold-
5 water stored in Shasta Reservoir, or some related failure to manage cold-water
6 storage, could put populations of anadromous fish at risk of severe population
7 decline or extirpation in the long-term (NMFS 2009b). The risk associated with
8 a prolonged drought is especially high in the Sacramento River, as Shasta
9 Reservoir is intended to maintain only one year of carryover storage. The
10 recovery plan emphasizes that, under current conditions, even two consecutive
11 years of drought could reduce Shasta Reservoir storage to levels insufficient to
12 support the Sacramento River winter-run Chinook salmon spawning and
13 incubation season.

14 Conversely, water that is too cold is detrimental to the rapid growth of rearing
15 juveniles. Following construction of Shasta Dam, water released in the spring
16 was unusually cold and prevented the characteristic rapid growth of fall-run and
17 late fall-run juvenile Chinook salmon. Reduced growth rates result in increased
18 risk for predation and entrainment at unscreened and inadequately screened
19 diversions.

20 Various Federal, State, and local projects are addressing each of the
21 aforementioned factors contributing to anadromous fish population declines.
22 Recovery actions range from changing the timing and magnitude of reservoir
23 releases to changing the temperature of released water. In May 1990, State
24 Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) issued Order 90-5, which included
25 temperature objectives for the Sacramento River to protect winter-run Chinook
26 salmon. This order was reinforced by the 1993, 2004, and 2009 NMFS
27 biological opinions (BO) for winter-run Chinook salmon, which established
28 certain operating parameters for Shasta Reservoir. The State Water Resources
29 Control Board action and the NMFS BOs set minimum flows in the river
30 downstream from Keswick Dam and minimum Shasta Reservoir carryover
31 storage targets primarily to affect water temperatures during key periods.

32 In addition to flow requirements, structural changes were made at Shasta Dam
33 to change the temperature of released water, such as construction of a
34 temperature control device (TCD), completed in 1997. The TCD can be used to
35 selectively draw water from different depths within the lake, including the
36 deepest, to help maintain river water temperatures beneficial to salmon. The
37 TCD is effective in helping to reduce winter-run Chinook salmon mortality in
38 some critical years,¹ and for fall- and spring-run Chinook salmon in below-
39 normal water years.

40 However, implementing requirements in the Trinity River Record of Decision
41 (ROD) (Reclamation 2000), as amended, may reduce water temperature

¹ Throughout this document, water year types are defined according to the Sacramento Valley Index Water Year Hydrologic Classification unless specified otherwise.

1 improvements provided by the TCD at Shasta Dam. One of the major elements
2 of the Trinity River ROD is reducing the average annual export of Trinity River
3 water from 74 percent to 52 percent of the flow (Reclamation 2000). This
4 reduces flow from the Trinity River basin into Keswick Reservoir, and then into
5 the Sacramento River. Because water diverted from the Trinity River is
6 generally cooler than flows released from Shasta Dam, implementing the
7 Trinity River ROD offsets some of the benefits derived from the TCD.

8 The overall trend for the past 10 years has shown increases in Sacramento River
9 Chinook salmon populations (CDFG 2010). This increasing trend in salmon
10 populations is likely due primarily to minimum release requirements at Shasta
11 Dam, the TCD, and changes in operating the Red Bluff Diversion Dam. In
12 addition, the Red Bluff Pumping Plant (RBPP) is expected to benefit Chinook
13 salmon populations in the Sacramento River. However, there is a residual need
14 for generally cooler water in the Sacramento River, especially in dry and critical
15 water years.

16 In the future, effects of climate change on operations at Shasta Lake could
17 potentially result in changes to water temperature, flow, and ultimately, fish
18 survival. As described in the Climate Change Projection Appendix, climate
19 change could result in increased inflows to Shasta Lake and higher reservoir
20 releases because of an increase in winter and early spring inflow into the lake
21 from high intensity storm events. The change in reservoir releases could be
22 necessary to manage flood events resulting from these potentially larger storms.
23 Climate change could also result in reduced end-of-September carryover storage
24 volumes, resulting in lower lake levels for a portion of the year, and a smaller
25 cold-water pool, resulting in warmer water temperature and reduced water
26 quality within Shasta Reservoir. Most importantly, it is expected that climate
27 change may result in increased water temperatures downstream from Shasta
28 Dam, particularly in summer months, and more frequent wet and drought
29 (particularly extended drought) years. Increased water temperatures and
30 extended drought periods may compound the threats to anadromous fish in the
31 Sacramento River.

32 **Water Supply Reliability**

33 California's water supply system faces critical challenges with demands
34 exceeding supplies for urban, agricultural, and environmental water uses across
35 the State. The 2009 *California Water Plan Update* (DWR 2009) concludes that
36 California is facing one of the most significant water crises in its history;
37 drought impacts are growing, ecosystems are declining, water quality is
38 diminishing, and climate change is affecting statewide hydrology.
39 Compounding these issues, Reclamation's *Water Supply and Yield Study*
40 (Reclamation 2008) describes dramatic increases in population, land use
41 changes, regulatory requirements, and limitations on storage and conveyance
42 facilities, further straining available water supplies and infrastructure to meet
43 water demands. Resulting unmet water demands have led to increases in

1 competition for water supplies among urban, agricultural, and environmental
2 uses.

3 The following subsections discuss identified key issues related to water supply
4 reliability in California, including current and estimated water shortages,
5 anticipated effects of population growth and climate change on water supply
6 and demand, and limitations on system flexibility. The final subsection
7 discusses strategies for meeting future statewide water supply needs.

8 ***Estimated Water Supply Shortages***

9 Projecting accurate and quantified water supply and shortages in California is
10 complex; numerous variables exist and, just as important, numerous opinions
11 have been expressed regarding these variables. Table 1-1 displays estimated
12 water demands, available supplies, and shortages for the Central Valley and the
13 State under existing conditions (Reclamation 2008). Current water supply
14 shortages for the State are estimated at 2.3 and 4.2 million acre-feet (MAF) for
15 average and dry years, respectively. As shown in Table 1-2, without further
16 investment in water management and infrastructure, future shortages are
17 expected to increase to approximately 4.9 and 6.1 MAF in average and dry
18 years, respectively, by 2030. Representative demands for dry and average years
19 were based on water use data from the 2005 *California Water Plan Update*
20 (DWR), adjusted for population growth, increasing urban water use, and
21 reductions in irrigated acreage and environmental flow due to insufficient water
22 supplies. Shortages were determined on a regional basis, assuming that
23 limitations on conveyance and storage would prevent surpluses from one region
24 or use category from filling shortages in another.

25

1 **Table 1-1. Estimated Water Demands, Supplies, and Shortages Under Existing Conditions¹**

| Item | Hydrologic Basin | | | | | | State of California | |
|---|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| | Sacramento | | San Joaquin | | Two-Basin Total | | Average Year ² | Dry Year ² |
| | Average Year ² | Dry Year ² | Average Year ² | Dry Year ² | Average Year ² | Dry Year ² | | |
| Population (million) ³ | 2.9 | | 2.0 | | 4.9 | | 36.9 | |
| Water Demand (MAF) | | | | | | | | |
| Urban | 0.9 | 0.9 | 0.6 | 0.6 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 8.9 | 9.0 |
| Agricultural | 8.7 | 8.7 | 7.0 | 7.0 | 15.7 | 15.7 | 34.2 | 34.2 |
| Environmental | 11.9 | 9.4 | 3.1 | 2.3 | 15.0 | 11.7 | 17.5 | 13.9 |
| Total | 21.5 | 19.0 | 10.7 | 9.9 | 32.2 | 28.9 | 60.6 | 57.1 |
| Water Supply (MAF) | | | | | | | | |
| Urban | 0.9 | 0.9 | 0.6 | 0.6 | 1.5 | 1.5 | 8.8 | 8.4 |
| Agricultural | 8.7 | 8.6 | 6.9 | 7.0 | 15.6 | 15.6 | 33.2 | 32.0 |
| Environmental | 11.5 | 8.7 | 2.5 | 1.8 | 14.0 | 10.5 | 16.3 | 12.6 |
| Total | 21.1 | 18.2 | 10.0 | 9.4 | 31.1 | 27.6 | 58.3 | 53.0 |
| Total Shortage (MAF)⁴ | 0.4 | 0.8 | 0.7 | 0.5 | 1.1 | 1.3 | 2.3 | 4.1 |

Notes:

¹ Water demands, supplies, and shortages are from the 2008 Reclamation Water Supply and Yield Study

² Representative dry and average year supplies and demands were based on adjusted water use and supply data from the 2005 California Water Plan Update (DWR 2005).

³ Population estimates are from the California Department of Finance (2010)

⁴ Total shortages are calculated as the sum of shortages for each category by region and, therefore, may not equal the difference between total demands and supplies. For categories where supply is greater than demand, the shortage is equal to zero.

Key:

MAF = million acre-feet

2
3

1 **Table 1-2. Estimated Water Demands, Supplies, and Shortages for 2030¹**

| Item | Sacramento and San Joaquin Hydrologic Basins | | State of California | |
|---|--|-----------------------|---------------------------|-----------------------|
| | Two-Basin Total | | Average Year ² | Dry Year ² |
| | Average Year ² | Dry Year ² | | |
| Population (million) ³ | 10.5 | | 49.2 | |
| Water Demand (MAF) | | | | |
| Urban | 2.4 | 2.5 | 11.9 | 12.0 |
| Agricultural | 15.0 | 15.0 | 31.4 | 31.4 |
| Environmental | 14.9 | 11.7 | 17.5 | 14.0 |
| Total | 32.3 | 29.2 | 60.8 | 57.4 |
| Water Supply (MAF) | | | | |
| Urban | 1.5 | 1.5 | 8.4 | 8.0 |
| Agricultural | 15.6 | 15.6 | 32.8 | 31.5 |
| Environmental | 14.0 | 10.5 | 16.3 | 12.6 |
| Total | 31.1 | 27.6 | 57.5 | 52.1 |
| Total Shortage (MAF)⁴ | 1.8 | 2.2 | 4.9 | 6.1 |

Notes:

¹ Water demands, supplies, and shortages are from the 2008 Reclamation *Water Supply and Yield Study*

² Representative dry and average year supplies and demands were based on water use and supply data from the 2005 *California Water Plan Update* (DWR 2005) adjusted for population growth, increasing urban water use, and reductions in irrigated acreage and environmental flow due to insufficient water supplies.

³ Population estimates are from the California Department of Finance (2010)

⁴ Total shortages are calculated as the sum of shortages for each category by region and, therefore, may not equal the difference between demands and supplies. For categories where supply is greater than demand, the shortage is equal to zero.

Key:

MAF = million acre-feet

2

3

Potential Effects of Population Growth on Water Demands

4

A major factor in California's future water picture is population growth.

5

California's population is expected to increase by just over 60 percent by 2050

6

(California Department of Finance 2010) and could force some of the existing

7

water supplies currently identified for agricultural uses to be redirected to urban

8

uses. Some portion of increased population in the Central Valley would occur

9

on lands currently used for irrigated agriculture. Water that would have been

10

needed for these lands for irrigation would instead be used to serve replaced

11

urban demands. However, this would only partially offset the required

12

agricultural-to-urban water conversion needed to sustain projected urban water

13

demands, since much of the growth would occur on nonirrigated agricultural

14

lands.

15

The 2009 *California Water Plan Update* (DWR) estimates changes in future

16

water demands by 2050 considering three different population growth scenarios

17

as well as climate change. Table 1-3 shows results of this study for an average

18

water year (DWR 2009). The first scenario (Current Trends) assumes that recent

19

population growth trends will continue until 2050. The second scenario (Slow

20

and Strategic Growth) assumes that population growth will be slower than

21

currently projected. The third scenario (Expansive Growth) assumes that

1 population growth will be faster than currently projected, with nearly 70 million
 2 people living in California in 2050. Estimated reductions in agricultural water
 3 demands in Table 1-3 represent decreases in future agricultural water demands
 4 due to conversion from agricultural to urban land uses. Under the Current
 5 Trends and Expansive Growth scenarios, as much as 3 and 8 MAF,
 6 respectively, of increased demand is projected, adding to the current water
 7 shortages estimated in Table 1-1.

8 **Table 1-3. Estimated Annual Change in Water Demand in California for**
 9 **2050 Considering Different Population Growth Scenarios**

| Item | Current Trends | Slow and Strategic Growth | Expansive Growth |
|--|----------------|---------------------------|------------------|
| Population (million) | 59.5 | 44.2 | 69.8 |
| Irrigated Crop Acreage (million) | 8.6 | 9 | 8.3 |
| Water Demand Change¹ (MAF) | | | |
| Urban | 7 | 2 | 11 |
| Agricultural | -4.5 | -5.5 | -4 |
| Environmental | 1 | 2 | 1 |
| Total | 3 | -1.5 | 8 |

Source: DWR 2009

Note:

¹ Water demand change is the difference between the average demands for 2043—2050 and 1998—2005.

Key:

MAF = million acre-feet

10 **Potential Effects of Climate Change**

11 Another potentially significant factor affecting water supply reliability is
 12 climate change. Potential effects of climate change are many and complex
 13 (DWR 2006), varying through time and geographic location across the State
 14 (Reclamation 2011). Changes in geographic distribution, timing, and intensity
 15 of precipitation are projected for the Central Valley (Reclamation 2011), which
 16 could broadly impact rainfall runoff relationships important for flood
 17 management as well as water supply. Additionally, when climate change is
 18 considered in projections of future water demand, annual water demand is
 19 higher than under a repeat of historical climate (DWR 2009). Other possible
 20 impacts range from potential sea level rise, which could impact coastal areas
 21 and water quality, to impacts to overall system storage for water supply.

22 A reduction in total system storage is widely predicted to occur with climate
 23 change. Precipitation held in snowpacks makes up a significant quantity of total
 24 annual supplies needed for urban, agricultural, and many environmental uses. It
 25 is expected that in the future, climate change may significantly reduce water
 26 held in snowpacks in the Sierra Nevada (Reclamation 2011, DWR 2009).
 27 Further potential for reductions in water conservation space in existing
 28 reservoirs in the Central Valley is anticipated because of increasing needs for
 29 additional space for flood management purposes. These potential reductions

1 could significantly impact available water supplies, especially for reservoirs
2 immediately upstream from large urban areas such as Folsom Lake on the
3 American River, upstream from the greater Sacramento metropolitan area.
4 During drought periods, supplies could be further reduced, and expected
5 shortages would be substantially greater.

6 **System Flexibility**

7 In addition to concerns about future water supply and demand, California's
8 Federal and State water systems lack flexibility in timing, location, and capacity
9 to meet the multiple objectives of the projects. Central Valley Project (CVP)
10 and State Water Project (SWP) flexibility has diminished with population
11 growth and increased environmental and ecosystem commitments and
12 requirements (Reclamation 2008). Complicating this issue is the variability
13 associated with water resources in California. Precipitation in California is
14 seasonably, temporally, and spatially variable, and urban, agricultural, and
15 environmental water users have variable needs for quantity, quality, timing, and
16 place of use.

17 California's water systems face the threat of too much water during floods, and
18 too little water to meet demands during dry and critical water years. Chronic
19 water shortages have led to increases in groundwater usage, which has led to
20 groundwater overdraft in many regions across the State. Groundwater overdraft
21 can cause permanent declines in groundwater levels, long-term reductions in
22 groundwater supplies, land subsidence, decreases in water quality, a greater
23 potential for salt water intrusion, and lasting environmental impacts. Challenges
24 are greatest during drought years, when water supplies are less available (DWR
25 2009).

26 Increasing CVP/SWP operational constraints have led to growing competition
27 for limited system resources between various users and uses. Urban and
28 required environmental water uses have each increased, resulting in increased
29 competition and conflicting demands for limited water supplies. For example,
30 the Central Valley Project Improvement Act (CVPIA), implemented in 1993,
31 dedicated 800 thousand acre-feet (TAF) of CVP water supplies to the
32 environment as well as additional water supplies for the Trinity River and
33 wildlife refuges. Table 1-4 illustrates the impacts of the CVPIA, modeled using
34 CalSim-II, on urban and agricultural water deliveries to the north and south of
35 the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta (Delta). Dry year agricultural water
36 deliveries were particularly impacted with deliveries to agricultural users, both
37 north and south of the Delta, reduced by about 50 percent. Current BOs by
38 NMFS and U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS),
39 resulting in increased Delta pumping constraints and other operational
40 restrictions, coupled with drought conditions, have even further decreased CVP
41 deliveries. As competition for limited resources between various uses grows,
42 water management flexibility and adaptability will be even more necessary in
43 the future.

44

1 **Table 1-4. Impact of CVPIA on CVP Deliveries**

| CVP Contract Deliveries | All Years | | | Driest Years | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------------|---------------------------------|----------------|
| | Pre-CVPIA Implementation (TAF) | Post-CVPIA Implementation (TAF) | Percent Change | Pre-CVPIA Implementation (TAF) | Post-CVPIA Implementation (TAF) | Percent Change |
| NOD Urban | 176 | 167 | -5% | 166 | 145 | -13% |
| NOD Agriculture | 279 | 234 | -16% | 169 | 84 | -50% |
| SOD Urban | 134 | 122 | -9% | 114 | 96 | -16% |
| SOD Agriculture | 1,588 | 1,137 | -28% | 931 | 471 | -49% |
| Total | 2,176 | 1,660 | -24% | 1,381 | 796 | -42% |

Source: Reclamation 2008

Notes:

¹ Deliveries were modeled using CalSim-II.

Key:

CVP = Central Valley Project

CVPIA = Central Valley Project Improvement Act

NOD = north of Delta

SOD = south of Delta

TAF= thousand acre-feet

2

3

Potential Approaches to Address Water Supply Needs

4

As noted by Reclamation’s *Water Supply and Yield Study* (Reclamation 2008), the *California Water Plan Update* (DWR 2009), and CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) ROD (2000), an integrated portfolio of solutions, regional and statewide, is needed to meet future water supply needs. The *Water Supply and Yield Study* stated that a “variety of storage and conveyance projects and water management actions have the potential to help fill [the] gap” between water supply and demand in California. The 2009 *California Water Plan Update* concluded that California must invest in reliable, high quality, and affordable water conservation; efficient water management; and development of water supplies to protect public health, and improve California’s economy, environment, and standard of living. However, even with major efforts by multiple agencies to address the complex water resources issues in the State, demands are expected to continue to exceed supplies in the future.

5

6

7

8

9

10

11

12

13

14

15

16

17

To avoid major impacts to the economy, overall environment, and standard of living in California, actions to conserve existing supplies and optimize the use of existing facilities will be needed. Additionally, development of additional water sources and increased storage and delivery capability are critical for providing reliable water supplies for expanding municipal and industrial (M&I) uses and to maintain adequate supplies for agricultural and environmental purposes.

18

19

20

21

22

23

24 **Ecosystem Resources**

25

The health of the Sacramento River ecosystem, as elsewhere in the Central Valley, has been impacted in the last century by conflicts over the use of limited natural resources, particularly water resources. Many of California’s rivers and streams have been harnessed for beneficial uses such as hydropower, flood damage reduction, and water supply, contributing to a decline in habitat and

26

27

28

29

1 native species populations, and a resulting increase in endangered or threatened
2 species listings under the ESA and CESA.

3 Construction of Shasta Dam has had both negative and positive effects on
4 environmental resources in the region. While construction of the dam displaced
5 valuable riverine and upland habitat, it also created shoreline and shallow water
6 habitat for aquatic, terrestrial, and avian species in the reservoir area. For
7 example, Shasta Lake is home to the largest concentration of nesting bald eagles
8 in California, with 18 pairs nesting within 0.5 miles of the shoreline in any
9 given year.

10 ***Shasta Lake Area***

11 Various activities have impacted natural resources upstream from Shasta Dam,
12 within the lake, on adjacent lands, and in and near tributary streams. Historical
13 mining, ore processing practices and resulting acid mine drainage, and fire
14 suppression are among the activities causing the greatest challenges to
15 ecosystem resources in this area. Although mines in this area are no longer
16 operational and are currently undergoing remediation, they continue to remain a
17 documented source of metals, acidity, and sediments in the reservoir area. In
18 addition, fire suppression activities have resulted in an accumulation of
19 vegetation cover in the watershed and a decrease in the return intervals of
20 natural fires, both of which potentially affect erosion processes and sediment
21 delivery to tributaries and increase the likelihood of higher intensity fires (USFS
22 2010). To guide management of the Shasta-Trinity National Forest (STNF), the
23 U.S. Department of Agriculture, Forest Service (USFS) has prepared the
24 *Shasta-Trinity National Forest Land and Resource Management Plan* (USFS
25 1995). Primary goals of the *Shasta-Trinity National Forest Land and Resource*
26 *Management Plan*, which was implemented in 1995, are to integrate a mix of
27 management activities that allows use and protection of forest resources; meets
28 the needs of guiding legislation; and addresses local, regional, and national
29 issues. The *Shasta-Trinity National Forest Land and Resource Management*
30 *Plan* is intended to guide implementation of the *Aquatic Conservation Strategy*
31 *of the Northwest Forest Plan* (USFS 1994) for protection and management of
32 riparian and aquatic habitats adjacent to Shasta Lake.

33 Opportunities exist to further support ongoing USFS programs. These
34 opportunities include improving and restoring environmental conditions by
35 developing self-sustaining natural habitat in the area of Shasta Lake and its
36 tributaries to benefit fish and wildlife resources.

37 ***Downstream from Shasta Dam***

38 Land and water resources development has caused major resource problems and
39 challenges in the Sacramento River basin, including decreases in anadromous
40 fish and wildlife populations and losses of riparian, wetland, floodplain, and
41 shaded riverine habitat. These decreases and losses have resulted in reduced
42 populations of many plant and animal species.

1 The quantity, quality, diversity, and connectivity of riparian, wetland,
2 floodplain, and shaded riverine habitat along the Sacramento River have been
3 severely limited through confinement of the river system by levees, reclamation
4 of adjacent lands for farming, bank protection, channel stabilization, and land
5 development. Modification of seasonal flow patterns by dams and water
6 diversions also has inhibited the natural channel-forming processes that drive
7 riparian habitat succession. It is estimated that less than 5 percent of the
8 historical acreage of riparian habitat within the Sacramento River basin remains
9 today (Huber-Lee et al. 2003).

10 Decreases in quality and quantity of habitat have resulted in reduced
11 populations of various fish and wildlife species. The low populations and
12 questionable sustainability of these species have led to an increase in listings
13 under the ESA and CESA in recent years. Introduction of nonnative species has
14 also contributed to the decline in native animal and plant species. In addition,
15 lack of linear continuity of riparian habitat has impacted the movement of
16 wildlife species among habitat areas, adversely affecting dispersal, migration,
17 emigration, and immigration. For many species, this has resulted in reduced
18 wildlife numbers and population viability.

19 Ecosystem restoration along the Sacramento River has been the focus of several
20 ongoing programs, including the Senate Bill 1086 Program, CVPIA, CALFED,
21 and Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture. These and numerous local programs
22 have been established to address ongoing conflicts over the use of limited
23 resources within the Central Valley. Much effort has been directed in the upper
24 Sacramento River region above the RBPP toward restoring or improving
25 anadromous fisheries, which provide recreational and commercial values in
26 addition to their environmental value. Despite these efforts, a significant need
27 remains to conserve and restore ecosystem resources along the Sacramento
28 River.

29 Endangered and threatened fish and wildlife populations, critical habitat, and
30 sensitive Delta ecosystems are also declining. The decline is especially
31 pronounced in the case of pelagic fish species in the Delta, including delta
32 smelt, striped bass, threadfin shad, and longfin smelt. Recent monitoring results
33 indicate that the threatened delta smelt population continues to remain at or near
34 all-time lows and, as a result, delta smelt have been recommended for relisting
35 as endangered. Observations of sharp declines in fish population have resulted
36 in restrictions on Delta water operations to protect fish populations during
37 environmentally sensitive periods. Legal actions concerning the impacts of
38 CVP and SWP operations on fish populations, such as the December 2007
39 *Natural Resources Defense Council v. Kempthorne* (delta smelt), court decision
40 and the May 2008 *Pacific Coast Federation of Fishermen's Associations vs.*
41 *Gutierrez* (anadromous fish species) court decision, continue to shape water
42 management in the Sacramento River basin and Delta.

1 In recognition of the challenges facing water management in California, and the
2 need to develop new strategies for a sustainable Delta ecosystem that would
3 continue to support its economic functions, various planning efforts are
4 underway. Current planning efforts, such as the Bay Delta Conservation Plan/
5 Delta Habitat Conservation and Conveyance Program are focused on
6 developing ecological solutions to protect Delta fisheries while providing a
7 sustainable and reliable water conveyance system for the CVP and SWP.
8 Greater operational flexibility within the CVP/SWP system is needed to address
9 ecosystem concerns in the Sacramento River and Delta.

10 **Flood Management**

11 Large and small communities and agricultural lands in the Central Valley are
12 subject to flooding along the Sacramento River. U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
13 (USACE), in partnership with DWR, has worked to assess basin-wide flood
14 management issues and identify options in the Sacramento River basin to
15 address these issues. Measures to reduce high flows in the Sacramento River
16 include spilling floodwater into bypass areas through historical overflow areas,
17 streams, conveyance canals, and weirs. The comprehensive flood control
18 system in the Sacramento River basin includes river, canal, and stream
19 channels, levees, flood relief bypasses, weirs, flood relief structures, a natural
20 overflow area, outfall gates, and drainage pumping plants. USACE and DWR
21 continue to develop improvements associated with the Sacramento River Bank
22 Protection Project and to assist in local flood damage reduction projects along
23 the Sacramento River. DWR is currently working on the implementation of the
24 Central Valley Flood Protection Plan, which was adopted in 2012 to address
25 flood issues throughout the Sacramento and San Joaquin valleys and the Delta.

26 Flooding poses risks to human life, health, and safety. Threats to the public
27 from flooding are caused by many factors, including overtopping or sudden
28 failures of levees, which can cause deep and rapid flooding with little warning,
29 threatening lives and public safety. In addition, urban development in flood-
30 prone areas has exposed the public to the risk of flooding.

31 Physical impacts from flooding occur to residential, agricultural, commercial,
32 industrial, institutional, and public property. Damages occur to buildings,
33 contents, automobiles, and outside property, including agricultural crops,
34 equipment, and landscaping. Physical damages include cleanup costs and costs
35 to repair roads, bridges, sewers, power lines, and other infrastructure
36 components. Nonphysical flood losses include income losses and the cost of
37 emergency services, such as flood fighting and disaster relief.

38 Even though a project to enlarge Shasta Dam and Reservoir has the potential to
39 significantly reduce flood flows in the upper Sacramento River, influencing
40 factors exist that can conflict with flood operation. Flood management
41 operations at Shasta Dam, even with explicit rules provided in the Shasta Dam
42 and Lake Flood Control Diagram (USACE 1977), are difficult to manage during
43 a flood event. This is primarily due to the extreme inflow volumes to Shasta

1 Reservoir that can occur over long periods, numerous points of inflow along the
2 river downstream from Shasta Dam, and multiple points of operational interest
3 downstream. The primary downstream control point along the Sacramento
4 River that determines reservoir releases under real-time operations is Bend
5 Bridge.

6 Other unofficial factors enter into flood management decisions, such as peak
7 flows at Hamilton City or other rural communities that are at risk of flooding.
8 These factors, combined with the uncertainty of storm forecasting, could lead to
9 a reduction in flood operation flexibility at Shasta Dam. Should this occur, it
10 could cause a cascading impact on effective flood management downstream to
11 the Delta. Accordingly, there is a need to review flood control operations at
12 Shasta Dam.

13 **Hydropower**

14 Were California a nation, it would be the twelfth largest consumer of electricity
15 worldwide (California Energy Commission 2002). Among the 50 States,
16 California is the second largest consumer of electricity. Although California
17 has 12 percent of the Nation's population, it uses only 7 percent of the Nation's
18 electricity. This makes California the most energy-efficient State per capita in
19 the Nation. Even so, demands for electricity are growing at a rapid pace.

20 As an example, over the next 10 years, California's peak demand for electricity
21 is expected to increase 30 percent, from about 50,000 megawatts (MW) to about
22 65,000 MW. There are, and will continue to be, increasing demands for new
23 electrical energy supplies, including clean energy sources, such as hydropower.
24 Executive Orders S-14-08 and S-21-09, issued in 2008 and 2009 respectively,
25 established a goal of using renewable energy sources, including hydropower, for
26 33 percent of the State's energy consumption by 2020 (California Public
27 Utilities Commission 2011). Adding to the need for additional energy sources,
28 existing nuclear power plants are nearing the end of their design lives and some
29 may be offline within the next 10 to 20 years.

30 **Recreation**

31 As the population of the State of California continues to grow, demands will
32 increase significantly for water-oriented recreation at and near the lakes,
33 reservoirs, streams, and rivers of the Central Valley. According to the 2009
34 California Water Plan Update (DWR 2009), the Central Valley is experiencing
35 dramatic population growth, but currently has insufficient access to water-
36 dependent recreation opportunities. Further increases in demand, accompanied
37 by relatively static recreation resources, will cause additional issues at existing
38 recreation areas. These challenges will be especially pronounced at Shasta
39 Lake, which is one of the most visited recreation destinations in the state and in
40 the region. Even under current levels of demand, USFS, which manages
41 recreation at Shasta Lake, has expressed concern about seasonal capacity
42 problems at existing marinas and USFS facilities. A significant and increasing

1 need exists to improve recreation-related facilities and conditions at Shasta
2 Lake.

3 **Water Quality**

4 The Sacramento River and the Delta support fish and wildlife while providing
5 water supplies for urban, agricultural, and environmental uses across the state.
6 The Sacramento River downstream from Keswick Dam is critical habitat for the
7 migration and reproduction of Chinook salmon (NMFS 2009b) and the Delta is
8 one of the largest ecosystems for fish and wildlife habitat and production in the
9 United States (Cal Water Boards, SWRCB, and CalEPA 2006). However,
10 saltwater intrusion, municipal discharges, agricultural drainage, and water
11 project flows and diversions have led to water quality issues within the Delta,
12 particularly related to salinity, that have resulted in significant declines in
13 pelagic populations (Cal Water Boards, SWRCB, and CalEPA 2006). In the
14 Sacramento River and its tributaries, water temperatures, which are vital for
15 anadromous fish survival, are affected by variations in climate and rainfall as
16 well as operating conditions of various Federal, State, and local water supply
17 systems. Additionally, urban and agricultural runoff, and runoff and seepage
18 from abandoned mining operations, have resulted in elevated levels of
19 pesticides, phosphorous, mercury, and other metals in the Sacramento River.

20 Several environmental flow goals and objectives in the Central Valley,
21 including the Delta, have been established through legal mandates to address the
22 impacts of water operations and water quality deterioration on the Sacramento
23 River basin and Delta ecosystems and on endangered and threatened fish
24 populations. Planning efforts, such as the Bay Delta Conservation Plan, are
25 intended to allow implementation of projects that restore and protect water
26 supply and reliability, water quality, and ecosystem health in the Delta to
27 proceed within a stable regulatory framework. Additional operational flexibility
28 is needed to provide further opportunities to improve Sacramento River and
29 Delta water quality conditions. Increasing storage in Shasta Reservoir could
30 provide increased CVP operational flexibility to meet water quality goals in the
31 Delta, as well as provide more cold-water storage in critical years to improve
32 Sacramento River water temperatures.

33 **Existing and Future Resources Conditions in Study Area**

34 Shasta Dam and Reservoir are located on the upper Sacramento River in
35 Northern California about 9 miles northwest of the City of Redding, within
36 Shasta County. The SLWRI includes both a primary and extended study area
37 because of the potential influence of the proposed modification of Shasta Dam
38 and Reservoir, and subsequent water deliveries on resources over a rather large
39 geographic area. The primary study area for the SLWRI encompasses Shasta
40 Dam and Lake; lower reaches of three primary tributaries flowing into Shasta
41 Lake (Sacramento River, McCloud River, and Pit River) and all smaller
42 tributaries flowing into the lake; Trinity Lake and Lewiston Reservoir; and the

1 Sacramento River downstream to about the RBPP, including tributaries at their
2 confluence. Figure 1-3 shows the geographic extent of the primary study area.

3 The extended study area includes other areas of California with resource
4 programs or projects that could potentially be indirectly influenced by
5 modifying Shasta Dam and Reservoir. The extended study area encompasses
6 the Sacramento River downstream from the RBPP, the Delta, portions of major
7 tributaries, namely the lower Feather and American Rivers, parts of the lower
8 San Joaquin River, and facilities and water service areas of the CVP and SWP.
9 Detailed descriptions of the study area and existing conditions for physical,
10 biological, cultural, and socioeconomic resources within the SLWRI study area
11 is included in the accompanying DEIS and the Physical Resources Appendix,
12 Biological Resources Appendix, Cultural Resources Appendix, and
13 Socioeconomics Appendix. Following is a brief description of the likely future
14 resources conditions in the study area.

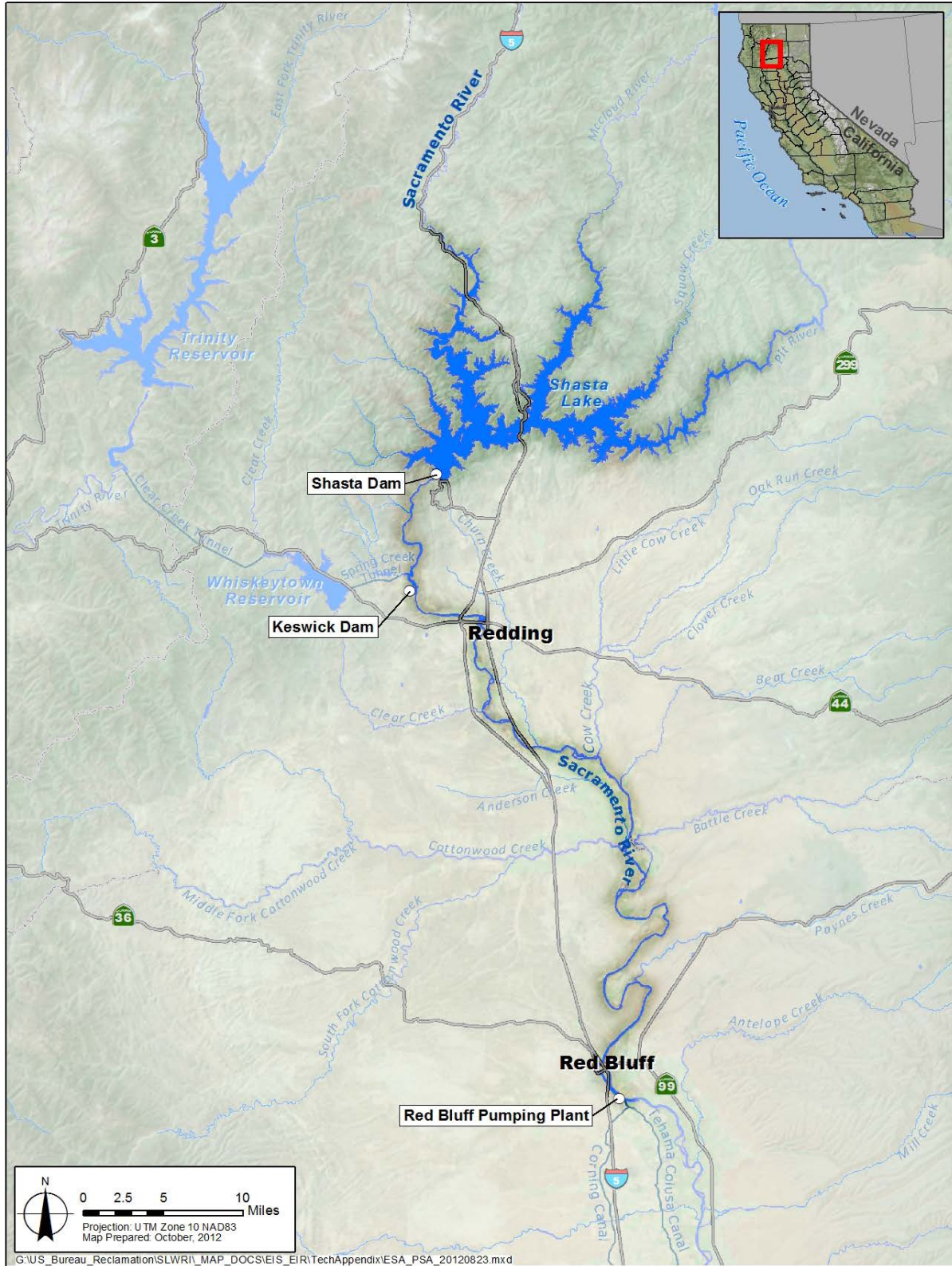
15 **Likely Future Conditions**

16 Identification of the magnitude of potential water resources and related
17 problems, needs, and opportunities in the study area is based not only on the
18 existing conditions, but also on an estimate of how these conditions may change
19 in the future. Predicting future changes to the physical, biological, cultural, and
20 socioeconomic environments in the primary and extended study areas is
21 complicated by ongoing programs and projects and potential changes in
22 regulatory requirements. Several ecosystem restoration, water quality, water
23 supply, and levee improvement projects are likely to be implemented in the
24 future. Collectively, these efforts may improve ecosystem resources, Delta
25 water quality, water supply, and levees. Much of this improvement would be
26 based on separate opportunities that are not integrated in a single plan or part of
27 an approved and funded program.

28 The following sections summarize likely future conditions for physical,
29 biological, cultural, and socioeconomic resources within the SLWRI study area,
30 as described in the accompanying DEIS.

31 ***Physical Resources Environment***

32 Basic physical conditions in the primary and extended study areas are expected
33 to remain relatively unchanged in the future. Continued development in urban
34 and suburban areas is expected. Ongoing restoration efforts along rivers are
35 expected to marginally improve natural riverine processes. Without major
36 physical changes to the river systems, hydrologic conditions may remain
37 unchanged. However, the region's hydrology could be altered should there be
38 significant changes in global climatic conditions; scientific work in this field of
39 study is continuing. Without major changes in hydrology, topography, or
40 geology, sedimentation and erosion are also likely to remain unchanged.



1
2 **Figure 1-3. Shasta Lake Water Resources Investigation Primary Study Area – Shasta**
3 **Lake Area and Sacramento River from Shasta Dam to Red Bluff Pumping Plant**

1 Much effort has been expended to control the levels and types of herbicides,
2 fungicides, and pesticides that can be used in the environment. Further, efforts
3 are underway to better manage the quality of runoff from urban environments to
4 the major stream systems. However, water quality conditions are expected to
5 remain unchanged and similar to existing conditions.

6 It is unclear to what extent potential changes to the region's climate could occur
7 in association with global climate change. As the population continues to grow
8 and agricultural lands are converted to urban and industrial uses, a general
9 degradation of air quality conditions could occur. However, because of
10 technological innovation and stringent regulations, air quality could improve
11 over time. While similar types and sources of hazardous materials and waste are
12 likely to be present in the future, increasing population will likely increase the
13 potential for hazardous waste issues. Similarly, increasing population will
14 likely affect increases in environmental noise and vibration.

15 ***Biological Resources Environment***

16 Efforts are underway by numerous agencies and groups to restore various
17 biological conditions throughout the primary and extended study areas.
18 Accordingly, major areas of wildlife habitat, including wetlands and riparian
19 vegetation areas, are expected to be protected and restored. However, as
20 population and urban growth continues, and land uses are converted to urban
21 centers, many wildlife and plant species especially dependent on woodland, oak
22 woodland, and grassland habitats may be adversely affected.

23 Through the significant efforts of Federal and State wildlife agencies,
24 populations of special-status species in the riverine and nearby areas are
25 estimated to generally remain as under existing conditions. Although increases
26 in anadromous and resident fish populations in the Sacramento River could
27 continue through implementation of projects such as the Battle Creek Salmon
28 and Steelhead Restoration Project, some degradation will likely occur through
29 actions that reduce Sacramento River flows or elevate water temperatures such
30 as implementation of the Trinity River ROD. Accordingly, populations of
31 anadromous fish are expected to remain generally similar to existing conditions.

32 No rivers or streams in the primary study area are expected to be added to the
33 list of Federal and/or State wild and scenic resources. The wild and scenic
34 status of the McCloud River is expected to remain as under existing conditions.

35 ***Cultural Resources Environment***

36 In the vicinity of Shasta Lake, any archaeological, historic, or ethnographic
37 resources currently affected by erosion due to reservoir fluctuations would
38 continue to be impacted. Artifacts located around the perimeter of the existing
39 reservoir will continue to be subject to collection by recreationalists. Similarly,
40 conditions related to the cultural environment downstream from Shasta Dam are
41 unlikely to change significantly.

1 **Socioeconomic Resources Environment**

2 The State’s population is estimated to increase from approximately 37 million
3 in 2005 to about 44 million by 2020, and to approximately 60 million by 2050.
4 Between now and 2050, Shasta and Tehama counties are expected to continue
5 their historic growth trends. According to the California Department of Finance
6 (2007, 2010), Shasta County’s population is expected to increase by
7 approximately 86 percent by 2050 to a total of approximately 332,000 residents
8 (2005 population was 179,000). This represents an expected increase in
9 population that is almost 20 percent greater than for the State as a whole. The
10 population of Tehama County is expected to more than double by 2050, with
11 population increasing from approximately 60,000 (in 2005) to 124,000
12 (California Department of Finance 2007, 2010).

13 To support these expected increases in population, some conversion of
14 agricultural and other rural land to urban uses is anticipated. More
15 transportation routes are likely to be constructed to connect the anticipated
16 population increase in the Central Valley to transportation infrastructure.
17 Anticipated increases in population growth will also impact visual resources as
18 areas of open space on the valley floor are converted to urban uses.

19 Increases in population will increase demands for electric, natural gas, and
20 wastewater utilities; public services such as fire, police protection, and
21 emergency services; and water-related and communication infrastructure. The
22 increase in population and aging “baby boomer” generation will increase the
23 need for health services. The region’s superior outdoor recreational
24 opportunities and moderate housing cost opportunities are expected to attract
25 increasing numbers of retirees from outside the region and State. An increasing
26 population will produce employment gains, particularly in retail sales, personal
27 services, finance, insurance, and real estate. Recreation is expected to remain an
28 important element of the community and economy in the region.

29 Anticipated increases in population growth in the Central Valley will also
30 significantly increase demands on water resources systems for additional and
31 reliable Central Valley water supplies, energy supplies, water-related facilities,
32 recreational facilities, and flood management facilities.

33 **Planning Objectives**

34 This section discusses the national planning objectives and objectives,
35 constraints, and other considerations specific to the SLWRI.

36 **National Planning Objectives**

37 The Federal objective is defined in the P&G (WRC 1983) as follows:

38 *The Federal objective of water and related resources project*
39 *planning is to contribute to national economic development*
40 *consistent with protecting the Nation’s environment, pursuant*

1 *to national environmental statutes, applicable executive orders,*
2 *and other Federal planning requirements.*

3 Contributions to national economic development (NED) are further defined as
4 “increases in the net value of the national output of goods and services,
5 expressed in monetary units. Contributions to NED are direct net benefits that
6 accrue in the planning area and the rest of the Nation” (WRC 1983).

7 The National Water Resources Policy specified in the Water Resources
8 Development Act of 2007 (Public Law 110-114, Section 2031), is that Federal
9 water resources investments should reflect national priorities, encourage
10 economic development, and protect the environment by doing the following:

- 11 • Seek to maximize sustainable economic development
- 12 • Seek to avoid the unwise use of floodplains and flood-prone areas and
13 minimize adverse impacts and vulnerabilities in any case in which a
14 floodplain or flood-prone area must be used
- 15 • Protect and restore the functions of natural systems and mitigate any
16 unavoidable damage to natural systems

17 In consideration of the many complex water management challenges and
18 competing demands for limited Federal resources, Federal agencies investing in
19 water resources should strive to maximize public benefits, particularly
20 compared to costs. Public benefits encompass environmental, economic, and
21 social goals, including monetary and nonmonetary benefits, and allow for the
22 inclusion of quantified and unquantified benefits. Stakeholders and decision
23 makers expect the formulation and evaluation of a diverse range of alternative
24 solutions. Such solutions may produce varying degrees of benefits and/or
25 impacts relative to the three goals specified above. As a result, trade-offs
26 among potential solutions will need to be assessed and properly communicated
27 during the decision making process.

28 **SLWRI-Specific Planning Objectives**

29 On the basis of the problems, needs, and opportunities identified and defined
30 previously, study authorities and other pertinent direction, including information
31 contained in the August 2000 CALFED ROD, primary and secondary planning
32 objectives were developed. Primary planning objectives are those which
33 specific alternatives are formulated to address. The primary objectives are
34 considered to have equal priority, with each pursued to the maximum
35 practicable extent without adversely affecting the other. Secondary planning
36 objectives are considered to the extent possible through pursuit of the primary
37 planning objectives.

- 1 • **Primary Planning Objectives:**
- 2 – Increase the survival of anadromous fish populations in the
- 3 Sacramento River, primarily upstream from RBPP.
- 4 – Increase water supply and water supply reliability for agricultural,
- 5 M&I, and environmental purposes to help meet current and future
- 6 water demands, with a focus on enlarging Shasta Dam and
- 7 Reservoir.
- 8 • **Secondary Planning Objectives:**
- 9 – Conserve, restore, and enhance ecosystem resources in the Shasta
- 10 Lake area and along the upper Sacramento River.
- 11 – Reduce flood damage along the Sacramento River.
- 12 – Develop additional hydropower generation capabilities at Shasta
- 13 Dam.
- 14 – Maintain and increase recreation opportunities at Shasta Lake.
- 15 – Maintain or improve water quality conditions in the Sacramento
- 16 River downstream from Shasta Dam and in the Delta.

17 **Planning Constraints and Other Considerations**

18 The P&G provide fundamental guidance for the formulation of Federal water
19 resources projects. In addition, basic constraints and other considerations
20 specific to this investigation must be developed and identified. Following is a
21 summary of the constraints and considerations being used for the SLWRI.

22 **Planning Constraints**

23 Fundamental to the plan formulation process is identifying and developing basic
24 constraints specific to this investigation. Some planning constraints are more
25 rigid than others. Examples of more rigid constraints include congressional
26 direction in study authorizations; other current applicable laws, regulations, and
27 policies; and physical conditions (e.g., topography, hydrology). Other planning
28 constraints are less restrictive but are still influential in guiding the process.
29 Examples include water resource planning efforts such as the CALFED ROD.
30 Several key constraints identified for the SLWRI are as follows:

- 31 • **Study Authorizations** – On August 30, 1935, in the Rivers and
32 Harbors Bill, an initial amount of Federal funds was authorized for
33 constructing Kennett (now Shasta) Dam. Initial authorization for the
34 SLWRI derives from Public Law 96-375 of 1980. This law authorized
35 the Secretary of the Interior to engage in feasibility studies relating to

1 (1) enlarging Shasta Dam and Reservoir, or constructing a replacement
2 dam on the Sacramento River and (2) using the Sacramento River to
3 convey water from an enlarged dam. Additional guidance is contained
4 in Public Law 108-361 of 2004, which authorized the Secretary of the
5 Interior to carry out "...planning and feasibility studies for projects to
6 be pursued with project-specific study for enlargement of the Shasta
7 Dam in Shasta County..." The CVPIA of 1992 (Public Law 102-575)
8 is pertinent because of its influence on water supply deliveries, river
9 flows, and related environmental conditions in the primary and
10 extended study areas.

- 11 • **CALFED Record of Decision** – CALFED was established to “develop
12 and implement a long-term comprehensive plan that will restore
13 ecological health and improve water management for beneficial uses of
14 the San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta (Bay-Delta)
15 system.” The 2000 CALFED ROD (CALFED 2000) includes program
16 goals, objectives, and projects primarily to benefit the Bay-Delta
17 system. The objectives for the SLWRI are consistent with the
18 CALFED ROD (CALFED 2000) for Shasta enlargement, as follows:

19 *Expand CVP storage in Shasta Lake by approximately*
20 *300 TAF. Such an expansion will increase the pool of*
21 *cold water available to maintain lower Sacramento River*
22 *temperatures needed by certain fish and provide other*
23 *water management benefits, such as water supply*
24 *reliability.*

25 The ROD has been adopted by various Federal and State agencies as a
26 framework for further consideration. In addition to objectives for
27 potential enlargement of Shasta Dam and Reservoir, the Preferred
28 Program Alternative in the CALFED ROD includes four other potential
29 surface water and various groundwater storage projects to help reduce
30 the gap between water supplies and projected demands. Expanding
31 water storage capacity is critical to the successful implementation of all
32 aspects of the program. Water supply reliability rests on capturing
33 peak flows, especially during wet years. New storage must be
34 strategically located to provide the needed flexibility in the current
35 water system to improve water quality, support fish restoration goals,
36 and meet the needs of a growing population. CALFED ROD also
37 includes numerous other projects to help improve the ecosystem
38 functions of the Bay-Delta system. Developed plans should address the
39 goals, objectives, and programs and projects of the CALFED ROD
40 (CALFED 2000).

- 41 • **Laws, Regulations, and Policies** – Numerous laws, regulations,
42 executive orders, and policies need to be considered, among them: the
43 P&G, NEPA, Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act, Clean Air Act,

1 Clean Water Act, National Historic Preservation Act, California Public
 2 Resources Code, Federal and State ESA, California Environmental
 3 Quality Act, and CVPIA. Table 1-5 summarizes many of the
 4 applicable laws, policies, plans, and permits potentially affecting the
 5 project.

6 **Table 1-5. Summary of Applicable Laws, Policies, Plans, and Permits Potentially**
 7 **Affecting Project**

| Level | Laws, Policies, Plans, and Permits |
|----------------|--|
| Federal | Federal Endangered Species Act |
| | Section 404 of the Clean Water Act |
| | Rivers and Harbors Act Section 10 |
| | National Historic Preservation Act, Section 106 (1966) |
| | Migratory Bird Treaty Act |
| | Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act |
| | Executive Orders 11990 (Wetlands Policy), 11988 (Flood Hazard Policy), and 12898 (Environmental Justice Policy) |
| | Indian Trust Assets |
| | Americans with Disabilities Act |
| | Rehabilitation Act |
| | Farmland Protection Policy |
| | Federal Transit Administration Activities and Programs |
| | Essential Fish Habitat |
| | Architectural Barriers Act |
| | Federal Cave Resources Protection Act (1988) |
| | Executive Order 11312 (National Invasive Species Management Plan) |
| | Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act |
| | National Wild and Scenic Rivers System |
| | Federal Land Use Policies |
| | Federal Water Project Recreation Act |
| | Whiskeytown-Shasta-Trinity National Recreation Area Management Guide |
| | Whiskeytown-Shasta-Trinity National Recreation Act |
| | Shasta-Trinity National Forest Management Plan |
| | Federal Energy Regulatory Commission Permitting Requirements |
| | U.S. Army Corps of Engineers – Shasta Dam and Reservoir Regulation Requirements |
| | U.S. Coast Guard Activities and Programs |
| | Uniform Relocations Assistance and Real Properties Acquisition Act of 1970, as amended (Public Law 91-646 and Public Law 100-17) |

8
9

1
2

Table 1-5. Summary of Applicable Laws, Policies, Plans, and Permits Potentially Affecting Project (contd.)

| Level | Laws, Policies, Plans, and Permits |
|--|--|
| State | California Public Resources Code |
| | Clean Water Act Section 401 |
| | California Endangered Species Act |
| | California Fish and Game Code – Fully Protected Species |
| | California Fish and Game Code Section 1600 – Streambed Alteration |
| | Porter-Cologne Water Quality Control Act |
| | California Native Plant Society Species Designations |
| | Reclamation Board Encroachment Permit |
| | California Water Rights |
| | State Lands Commission Land Use Lease |
| | State of California General Plan Guidelines |
| | California Department of Transportation Encroachment Permit and Activities, Programs |
| | California Land Conservation Act of 1965 (Williamson Act) |
| | California Native Plant Protection Act |
| | California Department of Boating Activities and Programs |
| | California Scenic Highway Program |
| | California Wild and Scenic Rivers Act |
| | Local |
| Shasta County Building Division Grading Permit | |
| Shasta County Zone Plan | |
| Shasta County Department of Public Works Encroachment Permit | |
| Shasta County General Plan | |
| Other Local Permits and Requirements | |

3

4 **Statewide Water Operation Considerations**

5 Reclamation and DWR use CalSim-II, a specific application of the Water
6 Resources Integrated Modeling System (WRIMS) to Central Valley water
7 operations, to study operations, benefits, and effects of new facilities and
8 operational parameters for the CVP and SWP. Operational assumptions for
9 refinement, modeling, and evaluation of potential effects of the No-Action
10 Alternative and action alternatives included in the DEIS were derived from the
11 following:

- 12 • The Reclamation 2008 *Biological Assessment on the Continued Long-*
13 *Term Operations of the CVP and SWP* (2008 OCAP BA)
- 14 • The USFWS 2008 *Formal ESA Consultation on the Proposed*
15 *Coordinated Operations of the CVP and SWP* (2008 USFWS BO)
- 16 • The NMFS 2009 *BO and Conference Opinion on the Long-Term*
17 *Operations of the CVP and SWP* (2009 NMFS BO)
- 18 • The Coordinated Operations Agreement between Reclamation and
19 DWR for the CVP and SWP, as ratified by Congress

1 Ongoing reconsultation processes for the 2008 USFWS and 2009 NMFS BOs
2 have resulted in some uncertainty in future CVP and SWP operational
3 constraints. In response to lawsuits challenging the 2008 and 2009 BOs, the
4 District Court for the Eastern District of California (District Court) remanded
5 the BOs to USFWS and NMFS in 2010 and 2011, respectively, and
6 subsequently ordered reconsultation and preparation of new BOs. These legal
7 challenges may result in changes to CVP and SWP operational constraints if the
8 revised USFWS and NMFS BOs contain new or amended reasonable and
9 prudent alternatives (RPA).

10 Despite this uncertainty, the 2008 and 2009 BOs issued by the fishery agencies
11 contain the most recent estimate of potential changes in water operations that
12 could occur in the near future. Furthermore, it is anticipated that the final BOs
13 issued by the resource agencies will contain similar RPAs. However, if ongoing
14 reconsultation results in operational conditions that deviate substantially from
15 the 2008 OCAP BA and the 2008 and 2009 BOs, these changes may be
16 considered in future SLWRI documents.

17 **Other Planning Considerations**

18 In addition to the planning constraints, a series of other planning considerations
19 helps guide plan formulation, not only in formulating the initial set of concept
20 plans, but also in determining which alternatives best address the planning
21 objectives. Planning considerations relate to economic justification,
22 environmental compliance, technical standards, etc., and may result from local
23 policies, practices, and conditions. Examples of these planning considerations,
24 used in the SLWRI for formulating, evaluating, and comparing concept plans,
25 and later, detailed comprehensive alternatives, include the following:

- 26 • Alternative plans should incorporate results of coordination with other
27 Federal and State agencies such as the USFWS, NMFS, USFS, Bureau
28 of Indian Affairs, U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Land
29 Management (BLM), DWR, and California Department of Fish and
30 Wildlife (CDFW).
- 31 • A direct and significant geographical, operational, and/or physical
32 dependency must exist between major components of alternatives.
- 33 • Alternative plans should address, at a minimum, each of the identified
34 primary planning objectives and, to the extent possible, the secondary
35 planning objectives.
- 36 • Measures to address secondary planning objectives should be either
37 directly or indirectly related to the primary planning objectives (i.e.,
38 plan features should not be independent increments).
- 39 • Alternatives should strive to first avoid potential adverse effects to
40 environmental resources, or then should include features to mitigate for

- 1 unavoidable adverse effects through enhanced designs, construction
2 methods, and/or facilities operations.
- 3 • Alternatives should avoid any increases in flood damage or other
4 significant, adverse hydraulic effects to areas downstream along the
5 Sacramento River.
 - 6 • Alternatives should strive to first avoid potential adverse effects to
7 present or historical cultural resources, or then include features to
8 mitigate unavoidable adverse effects.
 - 9 • Alternatives should not result in significant adverse effects to existing
10 and future water supplies, hydropower generation, or related water
11 resources conditions.
 - 12 • Alternatives should strive to balance increased water supply reliability
13 between agricultural and M&I uses.
 - 14 • Alternatives should not result in a reduction in existing recreation
15 capacity at Shasta Lake.
 - 16 • Alternatives are to consider the purposes, operations, and limitations of
17 existing projects and programs and be formulated to not adversely
18 impact those projects and programs.
 - 19 • Alternatives are to be formulated and evaluated based on a 100-year
20 period of analysis.
 - 21 • Construction costs for alternatives are to reflect current prices and price
22 levels, and annual costs are to include the current Federal discount rate
23 and an allowance for interest during construction (IDC).
 - 24 • Alternatives are to be formulated to neither preclude nor enhance
25 development and implementation of other elements included in the
26 CALFED ROD or other water resources programs and projects in the
27 Central Valley.
 - 28 • Alternatives should have a high certainty for achieving intended
29 benefits and not significantly depend on long-term actions (past the
30 initial construction period) for success. Alternatives that require future
31 and ongoing action specific for success have a higher uncertainty than
32 other plans.

33 **Criteria**

34 The Federal planning process in the P&G also includes four specific criteria for
35 consideration in formulating and evaluating alternatives: completeness,
36 effectiveness, efficiency, and acceptability (WRC 1983).

- 1 • Completeness is a determination of whether a plan includes all
2 elements necessary to realize planned effects, and the degree that
3 intended benefits of the plan depend on the actions of others.
- 4 • Effectiveness is the extent to which an alternative alleviates problems
5 and achieves objectives.
- 6 • Efficiency is the measure of how efficiently an alternative alleviates
7 identified problems while realizing specified objectives consistent with
8 protecting the Nation's environment.
- 9 • Acceptability is the workability and viability of a plan with respect to
10 its potential acceptance by other Federal agencies, State and local
11 governments, and public interest groups and individuals.

12 These criteria were used for comparison and evaluation of concept plans
13 (Chapter 4) during the Initial Alternatives Phase, and will be used for
14 comparison and evaluation of comprehensive plans as the SLWRI progresses.

15

Chapter 2

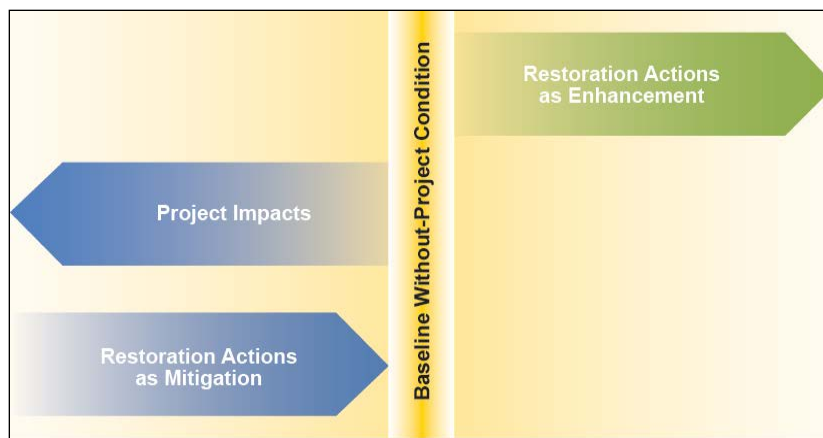
Management Measures

After development of the planning objectives, constraints, and criteria, the next major step in formulating concept plans was to identify and evaluate potential management measures. A management measure is any structural or nonstructural project action or feature that could address the planning objectives and satisfies the other applicable planning considerations. Concept plans are formulated (see Chapter 4) by combining retained management measures that address the primary planning objectives.

More than 60 potential management measures were identified as part of the SLWRI plan formulation process to address the primary and secondary planning objectives and satisfy the other applicable planning constraints, considerations, and criteria. These measures were developed through study team meetings, field inspections, public outreach, and environmental scoping for the SLWRI and EIS. Management measures were reviewed by SLWRI study team and stakeholders for their ability to address the primary and secondary planning objectives. Following is a general description of the measures considered, reasons for retaining or deleting the measures from further development, and information on how retained measures could fit into potential concept plans.

In the discussion of SLWRI management measures, the term “enhancement” specifically refers to restoration actions that improve environmental conditions above the baseline (without-project condition). Correspondingly, the term “mitigation” refers to restoration actions that improve environmental conditions toward the baseline to compensate for project impacts. The relationship between enhancement and mitigation is illustrated in Figure 2-1.

Identified management measures were analyzed in the *Mission Statement Milestone Report* (Reclamation 2003a), and summarized herein, to determine whether they would be retained for further consideration. One important factor was the potential for a measure to directly address a planning objective without adversely impacting other objectives. Measures were rated on a scale of high to low based on their relative ability to address the planning objectives. In most cases, measures that were rated as moderately addressing a planning objective, or less than moderately, were deleted from further consideration, while measures rating higher were retained. This is primarily because measures that could only marginally address an objective were generally found inconsistent with study constraints or other principles and criteria. Other major factors and rationale in retaining or deleting a measure are included in the following descriptions of the individual management measures.



1
2
3 **Figure 2-1. Conceptual Schematic of Restoration Actions as Enhancement Versus Restoration Actions as Mitigation**

4 It should be noted that measures that did not directly address the planning
5 objectives, or were otherwise dropped from consideration and further
6 development as alternative plan components under certain circumstances, may
7 be incorporated into alternative plans as mitigation measures. This is primarily
8 because some measures may be found potentially effective in mitigating adverse
9 impacts.

10 **Measures to Address Primary Planning Objectives**

11 Various management measures were identified to address the primary planning
12 objectives of increasing anadromous fish survival and increasing water supply
13 reliably. For each planning objective, measures were identified and separated
14 into categories. In the following sections, rationale is discussed for retaining or
15 deleting each measure.

16 **Increase Anadromous Fish Survival**

17 A number of potential management measures to address increasing anadromous
18 fish restoration opportunities were identified. Most are listed in the November
19 2003 *Ecosystem Restoration Office Report* (Reclamation 2003b). Of more than
20 20 measures identified specifically to address the primary objective of
21 increasing anadromous fish survival on the Sacramento River (see Table 2-1),
22 six were retained for possible inclusion in concept plans during the initial plans
23 phase.

24 ***Measures Considered***

25 Following is a brief discussion of the array of measures considered, which are
26 separated into three broad categories: (1) improve fish habitat, (2) improve
27 water flows and quality, and (3) improve fish migration. This section
28 summarizes rationale for deleting measures or retaining measures for further
29 consideration, as presented in Table 2-1.

Table 2-1. Management Measures Addressing the Primary Planning Objective of Increasing Anadromous Fish Survival

| Management Measure | Potential to Address Planning Objective | Status/Rationale |
|---|---|---|
| Improve Fish Habitat | | |
| Restore abandoned gravel mines along the Sacramento River | Moderate – Addresses primary planning objective. | Deleted – Consistent with other anadromous fish programs and with secondary planning objectives and constraints. This measure was initially retained, then deleted from further consideration during the comprehensive plans phase due to subsequent modeling results indicating marginal benefits to anadromous fish and a general lack of interest from the public and stakeholders. |
| Construct instream aquatic habitat downstream from Keswick Dam | Moderate – Addresses primary planning objective. | Retained – This measure was retained for potential further development due to its potential to successfully address the first primary planning objective, potential to combine favorably with other potential measures, and a high interest from fisheries agencies |
| Replenish spawning gravel in the Sacramento River | Moderate – Addresses primary planning objective. | Retained – High potential for combining with other measures. Demonstrated benefits that continue as gravel moves downstream. Low initial cost. Concerns over induced downstream impacts to agricultural facilities. Consistent with Federal planning objectives and principles. |
| Construct instream fish habitat on tributaries to the Sacramento River | Low to Moderate – Indirectly benefits planning objective. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to tributaries. Independent of hydraulic/hydrologic conditions in upper Sacramento River and would not directly contribute to improved ecological conditions along mainstem Sacramento River. |
| Remove instream sediment along Middle Creek | Low – Indirectly benefits planning objective. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to spawning conditions in tributaries. Independent of hydraulic/hydrologic conditions in upper Sacramento River and would not directly contribute to improved ecological conditions along mainstem Sacramento River. High uncertainty due to increased need for long-term remediation. |
| Rehabilitate inactive instream gravel mines along Stillwater and Cottonwood creeks | Low – Indirectly benefits planning objective. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to spawning conditions in tributaries. Independent of hydraulic/hydrologic conditions in upper Sacramento River and would not directly contribute to improved ecological conditions along mainstem Sacramento River. |
| Improve Water Flows and Quality | | |
| Make additional modifications to Shasta Dam for temperature control | Moderate to High – Potential to contribute to planning objective by improving temperatures for anadromous fish. | Retained – High likelihood of combining with measures involving increasing Shasta storage. Although existing TCD at Shasta effectively meets objectives, potential may exist to further modify the device to benefit anadromous fish with increased storage at Shasta. |
| Enlarge Shasta Lake cold-water pool | Moderate to High – Directly contributes to planning objective by improving water temperature conditions for anadromous fish. | Retained – High potential for combining with other measures. Consistent with other primary planning objective and secondary planning objectives. Consistent with goals of CALFED. |
| Modify storage and release operations at Shasta Dam | Moderate to High – Directly contributes to planning objective by improving flow conditions for anadromous fish. | Retained – This measure was retained because it is consistent with goals of CALFED and other programs/projects to benefit anadromous fish and has potential to combine with other measures, including raising Shasta Dam and Shasta Reservoir. |
| Modify Anderson-Cottonwood Irrigation District diversions to reduce flow fluctuations | Moderate – Reduced flow fluctuations would benefit anadromous fish, directly contributing to the planning objective. | Deleted – Conflicts with other primary planning objective of water supply reliability. |
| Increase instream flows on Clear, Cow, and Bear creeks | Low – Indirectly benefits planning objective on the Sacramento River. | Deleted – Independent of hydraulic/hydrologic conditions in upper Sacramento River. |
| Construct a storage facility on Cottonwood Creek to augment spring instream flows | Very Low – Indirectly benefits planning objective on the Sacramento River. | Deleted – Independent of hydraulic/hydrologic conditions in upper Sacramento River. Adverse environmental impacts expected to exceed benefits. |

This page left blank intentionally.

Table 2-1. Management Measures Addressing the Primary Planning Objective of Increasing Anadromous Fish Survival (contd.)

| Management Measure | Potential to Address Planning Objective | Status/Rationale |
|---|--|---|
| Improve Water Flows and Quality (contd.) | | |
| Transfer existing Shasta Reservoir storage from water supply to cold-water releases | Low – Potential to benefit anadromous fish but at a considerable disbenefit to water supply reliability. | Deleted – Violates basic plan formulation criteria – causes considerable reduction in water supply reliability without development of a replacement supply. |
| Remove Shasta Dam and Reservoir | Very Low – Relatively low potential benefit to anadromous fish with major adverse impacts to all other planning objectives. | Deleted – Violates basic plan formulation criteria and no known project or projects could replace the lost benefits provided by Shasta and Keswick dams, reservoirs, and appurtenant facilities, at any price. |
| Improve Fish Migration | | |
| Improve fish trap below Keswick Dam | Low to Moderate – Directly contributes to planning objective by reducing mortality and supplying more fish to hatcheries. | Deleted – Although helps fish populations, would not contribute to favorable conditions for sustained spawning and rearing of anadromous fish along mainstem Sacramento River. |
| Screen diversions on Old Cow and South Cow creeks | Moderate – Indirectly benefits planning objective on the Sacramento River. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to spawning conditions in tributaries. Independent of hydraulic/hydrologic conditions in upper Sacramento River and would not contribute to improved ecological conditions along mainstem Sacramento River. |
| Remove or screen diversions on Battle Creek | Moderate – Indirectly benefits planning objective on the Sacramento River. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to spawning conditions in tributaries. Independent of hydraulic/hydrologic conditions in upper Sacramento River and would not contribute to improved ecological conditions along mainstem Sacramento River. |
| Construct a migration corridor from the Sacramento River to the Pit River | Low – High uncertainty as to the potential to successfully benefit area resources. | Deleted – Extremely high cost. Multiple physical obstructions of effective fish passage even after implementation. Very low certainty of success. |
| Cease operating or remove the Red Bluff Diversion Dam | Moderate – Potential to improve fish migration along upper Sacramento River. | Deleted – As the result of another Federal investigation, the Red Bluff Diversion Dam Fish Passage Improvement Project, Reclamation has subsequently ceased operation of Red Bluff Diversion Dam. |
| Reoperate the CVP to improve overall fish management | Low – Limited potential to improve anadromous fish survival along the upper Sacramento River. | Deleted – See above measure regarding the Red Bluff Diversion Dam. Issues regarding reoperating facilities on the Trinity River were addressed in the Trinity River Record of Decision in 2000. Any further modification within that system would violate planning criteria for SLWRI. |
| Construct a fish ladder on Shasta Dam | Very Low – Very low potential for marginal benefit to anadromous fish on the upper Sacramento River. | Deleted – Extremely high cost, relatively small benefit on limited stream system, and very low potential for physically implementing a workable ladder. |
| Reintroduce anadromous fish to areas upstream from Shasta Dam | Low – Low potential for marginal benefit to anadromous fish on the upper Sacramento River. | Deleted – Fish passage above Shasta Dam is being studied under a separate Federal program as the result of the 2009 NMFS biological opinion. |

Key:
CALFED = CALFED Bay-Delta Program
cfs = cubic feet per second
CVP = Central Valley Project
TCD = temperature control device

This page left blank intentionally.

1 **Improve Fish Habitat** The six measures described below were identified to
2 improve fish habitat.

- 3 • **Restore abandoned gravel mines along the Sacramento River –**
4 Instream gravel mining has resulted, in many instances, in the
5 degradation of aquatic and floodplain habitat. This is primarily because
6 these activities have often created large artificial pits at various
7 locations in the primary study area that disrupt natural geomorphic
8 processes and riparian regeneration. Aquatic conditions at former
9 gravel mining sites are typically unsuitable for spawning and rearing.
10 High fish mortality due to stranding and unnatural predation occurs in
11 many abandoned pits that either lose their connections with the river
12 during low-flow periods or otherwise discourage effective transmission
13 of fish passage between the river and mine area. The river cannot refill
14 and restore many of these pits naturally because of changes in flow
15 regime and reductions in coarse sediment input. This measure consists
16 of acquiring, restoring, and reclaiming several inactive gravel mining
17 operations along the Sacramento River to create valuable aquatic and
18 floodplain habitat. Gravel pit restoration would involve filling deep
19 depressions and recontouring the stream channel and floodplain within
20 the gravel mine area, if possible and practical, to mimic more natural
21 conditions. Side channels and other features could be created to
22 encourage spawning and rearing and prevent stranding. Soil may need
23 to be imported to replenish areas where gravel mining has resulted in a
24 considerable loss of fine sediments. Revegetation using native riparian
25 plants would be performed on restored floodplain lands.

26 This measure was retained for potential further development as part of
27 the SLWRI because it may have potential to successfully address the
28 first primary planning objective. Furthermore, it may combine
29 favorably with other potential measures related to Shasta Dam and
30 Lake and their operation. This measure would not be expected to
31 conflict with other known programs or projects on the upper
32 Sacramento River.

33 **Construct instream aquatic habitat downstream from Keswick**
34 **Dam –** Keswick Dam is the uppermost barrier to anadromous fish
35 migration on the Sacramento River. Releases from the dam have
36 scoured the channel, and the dam blocks passage of gravels, bed
37 sediments, and woody debris that were replenished historically by
38 upstream tributaries. As a result, aquatic habitat is poor for spawning
39 and rearing of anadromous fish, and predation can be high because of
40 the lack of instream cover. Despite these unfavorable channel
41 conditions, cold-water releases from Keswick Dam attract large
42 numbers of spawners to this reach. This measure consists of
43 constructing aquatic habitat in and adjacent to the Sacramento River
44 downstream from Keswick Dam to encourage use of this reach by

1 anadromous fish for reproduction. Habitat restoration would involve
2 acquiring lands adjacent to the Sacramento River; earthwork along the
3 riverbank to construct side channels for spawning; and strategic
4 placement of instream cover structures within the river channel,
5 including large boulders, anchored root wads, and other natural
6 materials. Side channels and other features could also be created to
7 encourage spawning and rearing. Restored floodplain lands could be
8 revegetated with native riparian plants.

9 This measure was retained for potential further development as part of
10 the SLWRI, because it may have potential to successfully address the
11 first primary planning objective and due to high interest from fisheries
12 agencies. Furthermore, this measure will likely combine favorably with
13 other potential measures related to Shasta Dam and Reservoir and their
14 operation. This measure would not be expected to conflict with other
15 known programs or projects on the upper Sacramento River.

- 16 • **Replenish spawning gravel in the Sacramento River** – Historically,
17 tributary watersheds upstream from Keswick and Shasta Dams
18 provided a continuous source of high-quality gravel and other coarse
19 sediments to the Sacramento River. Dams, river diversions, gravel
20 mining, and other obstructions have blocked or reduced natural gravel
21 sources. Gravel suitable for spawning has been identified as a
22 considerable influencing factor in the recovery of anadromous fish
23 populations in the Sacramento River. Several programs, including
24 CALFED and the Anadromous Fish Restoration Program, have
25 provided gravel replenishment in selected locations. With the exception
26 of the CVPIA(b)(13) program, these programs represent single
27 applications at discrete locations. Similarly, this measure consists of a
28 single application of spawning-sized gravel at a discrete location in the
29 Sacramento River between Keswick and RBPP. Gravel would be
30 transported and placed into the Sacramento River downstream from
31 Keswick Dam. This measure was retained for potential further
32 development as part of the SLWRI because it may have potential to
33 successfully address the first primary planning objective. Furthermore,
34 it may combine favorably with other potential measures related to
35 Shasta Dam and Reservoir and their operation.

- 36 • **Construct instream fish habitat on tributaries to the Sacramento
37 River** – This measure consists of improving instream aquatic habitat
38 along the lower reaches of tributaries to the Sacramento River. Various
39 structural techniques would be employed to trap spawning gravels in
40 deficient areas, create pools and riffles, provide instream cover, and
41 improve overall instream habitat conditions. Both perennial and
42 intermittent streams would be potential candidates for structural habitat
43 improvements. Candidates for aquatic habitat improvement include
44 Middle, Olney, Churn, and Cow creeks. However, this measure would

1 not directly contribute to improved ecological conditions or fish habitat
2 along the mainstem Sacramento River. Although this measure would
3 have considerable benefits for tributaries, it was deleted from further
4 development as part of the SLWRI primarily because it is a separate
5 and independent action. It would not directly contribute to increasing
6 anadromous fish survival within the primary Sacramento River study
7 area.

- 8 • **Remove instream sediment along Middle Creek** – This measure
9 consists of implementing a sediment removal and control program
10 along Middle Creek, an intermittent tributary to the Sacramento River
11 between Keswick Dam and Redding. Lower Middle Creek supports
12 spawning runs of rainbow trout, steelhead, and salmon. Spawning
13 gravels have been degraded by fine granitic sediment eroding from
14 streambanks and adjacent land. Sediment from the creek also
15 negatively impacts spawning habitat in the Sacramento River around
16 the Middle Creek confluence. This measure was deleted from further
17 development primarily because it is a separate and independent action.
18 It would not considerably contribute to increasing anadromous fish
19 survival within the primary Sacramento River study area.

- 20 • **Rehabilitate inactive instream gravel mines along Stillwater and
21 Cottonwood creeks** – This measure consists of rehabilitating
22 ecological conditions in former instream gravel mining sites along
23 Stillwater Creek. Seven inactive gravel pits on Stillwater and/or
24 Cottonwood creeks historically contributed to depletion of nearly all
25 instream gravel resources along various reaches, leaving the channel
26 scoured to bedrock. Restoring these gravel mines could help Stillwater
27 Creek provide additional seasonal habitat for various anadromous and
28 resident fish. This measure was deleted from further development
29 primarily because it is a separate and independent action. It would not
30 contribute directly to increasing anadromous fish survival within the
31 primary Sacramento River study area.

32 **Improve Water Flows and Quality** The following section describes the
33 measures considered for improving water flows and quality.

- 34 • **Make additional modifications to Shasta Dam for temperature
35 control** – The TCD installed at Shasta Dam allows operators to make
36 selective releases from various reservoir depths to regulate water
37 temperatures to benefit anadromous fish in the upper Sacramento
38 River. This measure consists of determining if making additional
39 structural modifications to the outlets and existing TCD for temperature
40 control is possible and feasible and, if so, implementing those
41 modifications.

1 This measure was retained for further development primarily because it
2 could (1) improve the performance of the existing facility, (2)
3 complement other measures under consideration to raise Shasta Dam,
4 and (3) complement measures to improve aquatic spawning habitat in
5 the Sacramento River. This measure would not conflict with other
6 ecosystem restoration measures preliminarily retained herein, or other
7 known programs or projects on the upper Sacramento River.

- 8 • **Enlarge Shasta Lake cold-water pool** – Cold water released from
9 Shasta Dam considerably influences water temperature conditions on
10 the Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and the RBPP. This
11 measure consists of enlarging the cold-water pool by either raising
12 Shasta Dam and enlarging the minimum operating pool, or increasing
13 the seasonal carryover storage in Shasta Lake. Each action would help
14 provide greater flexibility in meeting water temperature targets
15 throughout the year and extending suitable spawning habitat
16 downstream. This measure also would be consistent with the goals of
17 CALFED.

18 This measure was retained for further development primarily because it
19 would (1) directly contribute to both primary planning objectives for
20 the SLWRI, (2) combine favorably with other measures, and (3) have a
21 high certainty of providing the intended benefits once implemented.
22 This measure would not conflict with any other ecosystem restoration
23 measures that were preliminarily retained, nor would it conflict with
24 other known programs or projects on the upper Sacramento River.

- 25 • **Modify storage and release operations at Shasta Dam** – In addition
26 to water temperature, flow conditions in the upper Sacramento River
27 are also important in addressing anadromous fish needs. This measure
28 consists of enlarging Shasta Dam and modifying seasonal storage and
29 releases to benefit anadromous fisheries. Although this measure could
30 help provide greater flexibility in meeting water temperature targets, it
31 would be aimed primarily at improving flows and influencing physical
32 channel conditions for anadromous fish. Changes would be made to the
33 timing and magnitude of releases performed to maintain target flows in
34 spawning areas and to improve the quality of aquatic habitat. The
35 quality of aquatic habitat could be further improved by cleaning
36 spawning gravels. These changes would be at the discretion of
37 Reclamation based on recommendations by the Sacramento River
38 Temperature Task Group (SRTTG). This measure would contribute to
39 the goals of the Anadromous Fish Restoration Program included as part
40 of the CVPIA. This measure also could include release changes during
41 the flood season to permit “pulse flows” and other releases that could
42 improve aquatic habitat conditions. Further, this measure could provide
43 additional control and dilution of acid mine drainage from Spring
44 Creek.

1 This measure was initially deleted from consideration because analyses
2 indicated a decreased fisheries benefit with increasing Sacramento
3 River flows compared to increasing the cold-water pool. However, this
4 measure was retained for further development when combined with
5 additional storage space in Shasta Reservoir, as part of an adaptive
6 management plan, primarily because it could directly contribute to both
7 primary objectives of the SLWRI and combine favorably with other
8 measures.

- 9 • **Modify Anderson-Cottonwood Irrigation District diversions to**
10 **reduce flow fluctuations** – This measure consists of modifying
11 operations at the Anderson-Cottonwood Irrigation District diversion
12 dam near Anderson to reduce extreme flow fluctuations and their
13 resulting impacts on anadromous fish. Extreme fluctuations in
14 Sacramento River flows result in fish stranding and juvenile fish
15 mortality. This measure was deleted from further development,
16 however, primarily because of potential impacts to water supply
17 reliability. Negative impacts on water deliveries from the Anderson-
18 Cottonwood Irrigation District diversion dam would conflict with the
19 second primary planning objective of increasing water supply
20 reliability.
- 21 • **Increase instream flows on Clear, Cow, and Bear creeks** – This
22 measure consists of increasing instream flows on Clear, Cow, and Bear
23 Creeks during critical periods to support anadromous fish that spawn in
24 the creek. Increasing flows would improve the quality of spawning
25 habitat and help reduce water temperatures, thereby increasing the
26 amount of suitable tributary spawning habitat available in the creeks.
27 This measure was deleted from further development primarily because
28 it would not contribute directly to increasing anadromous fish survival
29 within the primary Sacramento River study area. In addition, this
30 measure could impact hydropower production.
- 31 • **Construct a storage facility on Cottonwood Creek to augment**
32 **spring instream flows** – This measure consists of constructing a dry
33 dam or offstream storage facility on upper Cottonwood Creek to
34 support flows for spring-run Chinook salmon. A storage facility would
35 allow late-spring and summer releases for spring-run Chinook salmon,
36 and improve overall seasonal aquatic conditions. This measure was
37 deleted from further development primarily because it is an
38 independent action. It would not considerably or directly contribute to
39 increasing anadromous fish survival within the primary Sacramento
40 River study area. In addition, it is highly likely that this measure would
41 have considerable and overriding adverse environmental impacts in the
42 Cottonwood Creek watershed.

1 Central Valley, and the entire State, has greatly benefited from Shasta
2 Dam and Reservoir. It is believed that the cost of Shasta Dam and
3 Reservoir and its associated facilities have been paid multiple times
4 over since they were constructed in the early 1940s. Although the
5 potential benefit to anadromous fish resources along the upper
6 Sacramento River may be sizeable (substantial studies would be
7 required to define potential benefits and disadvantages to the fisheries),
8 these benefits by no means begin to approach the monetary benefit
9 associated with the existing project. No known project or projects
10 could replace the benefits provided by Shasta and Keswick dams,
11 reservoirs, and appurtenant facilities at any price. This measure was
12 deleted from further consideration primarily because it violates at least
13 one of the planning criteria concerning the potential to adversely
14 impact existing project purposes.

15 **Improve Fish Migration** The measures identified to improve migration are
16 described in the subsequent section.

- 17 • **Improve fish trap below Keswick Dam** – Keswick Dam is an
18 upstream barrier to fish migration on the Sacramento River. As part of
19 mitigation actions associated with the construction of Shasta and
20 Keswick dams, a fish trap facility was constructed at Keswick Dam to
21 capture anadromous fish for transport to the Coleman National Fish
22 Hatchery on Battle Creek. This measure consists of improving the
23 efficiency and performance of the fish trap below Keswick Dam to
24 increase survival of anadromous fish captured at the facility, thereby
25 providing additional adults and increased egg production for fish
26 hatchery operations. Although this measure has potential to contribute
27 to the primary planning objective of increasing anadromous fish
28 populations in the upper Sacramento River, it would not necessarily
29 contribute to increasing survival of anadromous fish in the upper
30 Sacramento River. This measure was deleted from further development
31 primarily because it would not improve spawning and rearing
32 conditions necessary for natural and sustainable reproduction of
33 anadromous fish in the upper Sacramento River.
- 34 • **Screen diversions on Old Cow and South Cow creeks** – This
35 measure consists of screening diversion intakes in the Cow Creek
36 watershed to reduce fish mortality. Over 100 agricultural diversions
37 exist from the Cow Creek watershed; while many are small, larger
38 diversions can entrain juvenile salmonids and other fish that use
39 spawning habitat provided by the watershed. This measure would
40 potentially reduce salmonid mortality at diversions within the Cow
41 Creek watershed. This measure would not contribute directly to
42 improved fish migration in the upper Sacramento River. Some of the
43 largest diversions identified as part of this measure, such as Kilarch
44 Powerhouse Ditch, South Cow Creek Powerhouse Ditch, and Bassett

1 Ditch, are between 10 and 25 miles upstream from the confluence with
2 the Sacramento River. In addition, several programs, including the
3 CVPIA (b)(21) are already proceeding with installation of fish screens
4 within the Sacramento River system. This measure was deleted from
5 further development primarily because it is an independent action and
6 would not directly contribute to anadromous fish survival within the
7 primary Sacramento River study area.

- 8 • **Remove or screen diversions on Battle Creek** – This measure
9 consists of removing or screening diversions and other water control
10 facilities on Battle Creek to allow full use of the watershed’s high-
11 quality, cold-water spawning habitat. Several projects either have been,
12 or are being implemented, on Battle Creek to improve access to habitat
13 and spawning success, including the Battle Creek Salmon and
14 Steelhead Restoration project and the Orwick Diversion Fish Screen
15 Improvement Project. However, additional large portions of the upper
16 Battle Creek watershed remain inaccessible to anadromous fish because
17 of diversions. This measure would provide access to high-quality
18 spawning habitat in the upper Battle Creek watershed. However,
19 several programs, including the CVPIA (b)(21) are already proceeding
20 with installing fish screens within the Sacramento River system.
21 Furthermore, this measure would not contribute directly to improved
22 fish migration in the upper Sacramento River. This measure was
23 deleted from further development primarily because it is an
24 independent action and would not contribute directly to increasing
25 anadromous fish survival within the primary Sacramento River study
26 area.

- 27 • **Construct a migration corridor from the Sacramento River to the**
28 **Pit River** – This measure consists of providing passage to spawning
29 areas upstream from Shasta Dam for anadromous fish from the
30 Sacramento River. One concept includes connecting the upper Pit River
31 to the Sacramento River, which would consist of (1) constructing a fish
32 channel between the Cow Creek basin and the Pit River Arm of Shasta
33 Lake, (2) constructing a fish barrier to prevent fish from entering
34 Shasta Lake, and (3) installing fish screens and flow control structures
35 at various locations along the natural and man-made migration route to
36 prevent straying. This and similar measures were deleted from further
37 consideration primarily because of the (1) high cost for complex
38 infrastructure, (2) major impacts to other facilities and extensive long-
39 term operation and maintenance requirements, and (3) high uncertainty
40 for the potential to achieve and maintain successful fish passage and
41 spawning.

- 42 • **Cease operating or remove the Red Bluff Diversion Dam** – This
43 measure involved either ceasing the operation of Red Bluff Diversion
44 Dam or removing the facility completely. This measure was requested

1 as part of the environmental scoping process. The two primary fish
2 passage issues associated with the Red Bluff Diversion Dam were (1)
3 delay and blockage of adults migrating upstream, and (2) the
4 impedance and losses of juveniles emigrating downstream. Fish ladders
5 located on each abutment of the dam were ineffective, limiting access
6 to remaining spawning habitat between Keswick Dam and Red Bluff.
7 Predation was also problematic in Lake Red Bluff. Potential solutions
8 to these problems were considered as part of the Red Bluff Diversion
9 Dam Fish Passage Improvement Project, a cooperative effort led by
10 Reclamation and the Tehama-Colusa Canal Authority. The project
11 developed a long-term solution to relieve conflicts between fish
12 passage and agricultural diversion needs. A number of alternatives
13 were considered, including removing the barrier to fish by removing
14 the gates completely and constructing pumps to divert water into the
15 Tehama-Colusa Canal, improvements to the existing fish ladders, and
16 construction of a bypass channel. This measure was deleted from
17 further consideration in the SLWRI because, as the result of the Red
18 Bluff Diversion Dam Fish Passage Improvement Project, Reclamation
19 has subsequently ceased operation of Red Bluff Diversion Dam.

- 20 • **Reoperate the CVP to improve overall fish management** – This
21 measure primarily includes reoperating all of the CVP facilities in the
22 upper Sacramento River system to improve anadromous fish resources.
23 This measure was requested as part of the environmental scoping
24 process. Major CVP facilities in the Sacramento River watershed that
25 could influence the primary planning objective besides Shasta Dam and
26 Reservoir includes Keswick Dam and Reservoir and features of the
27 Trinity and Sacramento River Divisions. Major facilities in the Trinity
28 River Division include Trinity Dam and Trinity Lake on the Trinity
29 River, Lewiston Dam and Lake on the Trinity River, and Whiskeytown
30 Dam and Lake on Clear Creek. Major facilities in the Sacramento River
31 Division include the RBPP and various facilities within the Corning
32 and Tehama-Colusa Canal service areas.

33 Efforts by the U.S. Department of the Interior in the Trinity River ROD
34 (Reclamation 2000) primarily resulted in reoperating facilities within
35 the Trinity River Division to improve fishery conditions on the Trinity
36 River. Any further reoperation of the facilities within the Trinity River
37 Division not adversely impacting other project purposes would likely
38 not be allowed under the existing decision because reoperations likely
39 could be accomplished only at the expense of fish on the Trinity River.
40 In addition, as a result of the Red Bluff Fish Passage Improvement
41 Project, Reclamation ceased operating Red Bluff Diversion Dam to
42 improve fish passage conditions in the Sacramento River. Construction
43 of a screened pumping plant, the RBPP, was completed in 2012 to
44 provide for continued water deliveries within the Corning and Tehama-
45 Colusa Canal CVP service areas.

1 This measure was deleted from further consideration in the SLWRI
2 primarily because no opportunity appears to exist to effectively further
3 reoperate the CVP facilities capable of affecting the Sacramento River
4 that would not result in adversely impacting other project purposes.

- 5 • **Construct a fish ladder on Shasta Dam** – This measure primarily
6 includes constructing a fish ladder on Shasta Dam to allow anadromous
7 fish to access Shasta Lake and approximately 40 miles of the upper
8 Sacramento River, about 24 miles of the lower McCloud River, and
9 various small creeks and streams tributary to Shasta Reservoir. This
10 measure was requested as part of the environmental scoping process. A
11 fish ladder at Shasta Dam would need to be approximately 476 feet
12 high. A number of high-head dams have been studied for fish ladders,
13 many of which would have allowed fish passage to much more
14 historical spawning areas than would be available upstream from
15 Shasta Lake. All of these high-head dam fish ladders have been
16 rejected mainly for cost reasons (fish trapping and hauling is much
17 cheaper under these circumstances). In addition, a high ladder concept
18 was attempted at the Pelton project on the Deschutes River in Oregon.
19 At this location, the fish were not able to travel the entire distance
20 safely because of the extreme length of the ladder, and the water
21 temperature increased considerably at higher elevations. This measure
22 was deleted from further consideration in the SLWRI primarily because
23 of the estimated high cost to construct and operate the fish ladder, the
24 low likelihood for success in getting the fish to successfully ascend the
25 ladder, and the likely major impacts to existing warm- and cold-water
26 species in the upper river reaches.

- 27 • **Reintroduce anadromous fish to areas upstream from Shasta Dam**
28 – This measure primarily includes trapping anadromous fish along the
29 Sacramento River likely just downstream from Keswick Dam,
30 transporting the fish by tanker truck, and releasing the fish in the upper
31 Sacramento River or the McCloud River to spawn. It would also
32 include some method of trapping potential out-migrating fish and
33 transporting them to the Sacramento River near Keswick for release
34 into the lower river. This measure was requested as part of the
35 environmental scoping process. Numerous dams would preclude this
36 measure on the upper Pit River. This measure was deleted from further
37 consideration in the SLWRI primarily because fish passage above
38 Shasta Dam to the upper Sacramento and McCloud rivers is being
39 studied under a separate Federal program as the result of the 2009
40 NMFS BO.

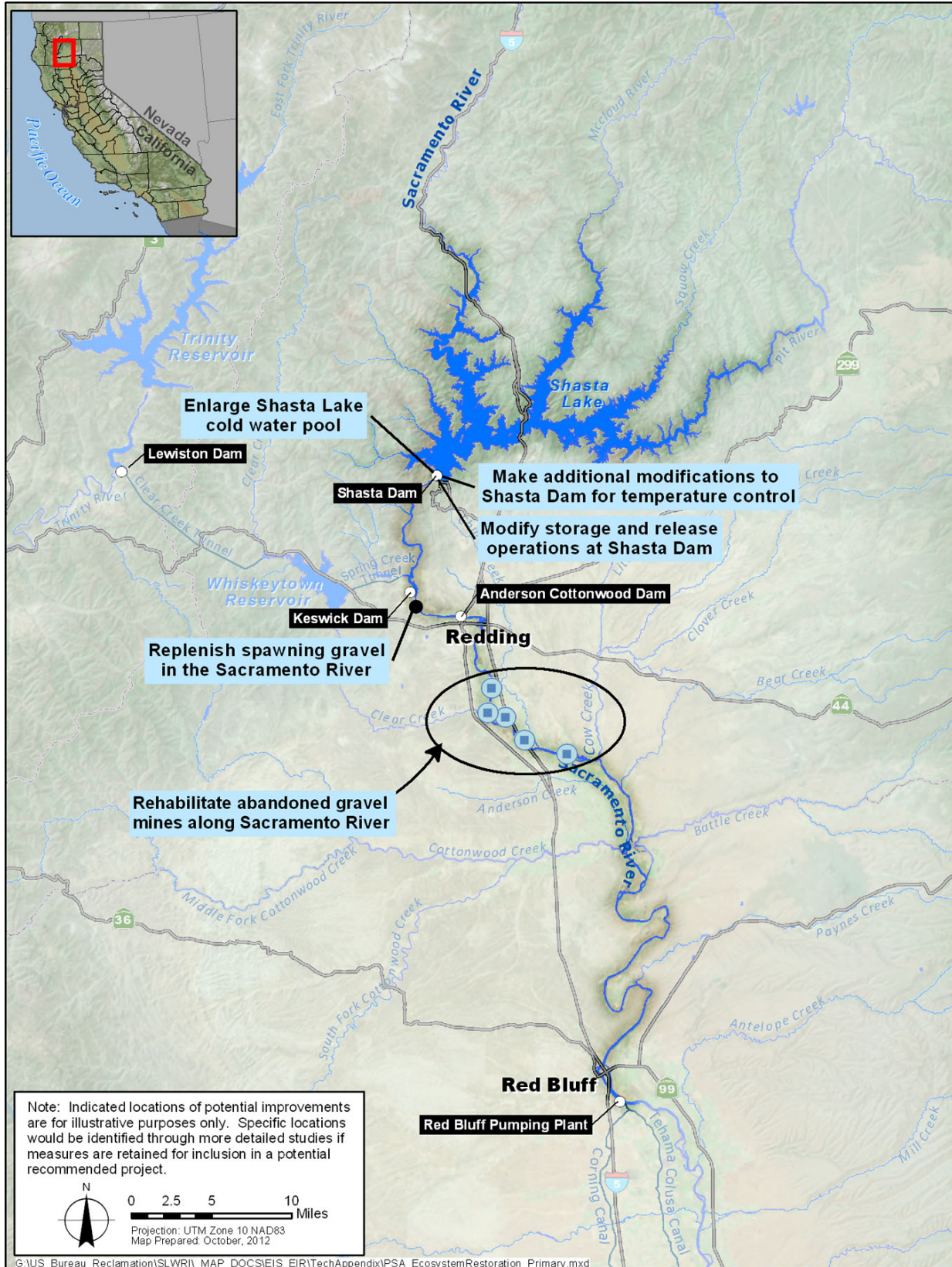
41 ***Measures Retained for Further Consideration***

42 Each of the six management measures retained to address the primary planning
43 objective of increasing anadromous fish survival was considered in greater
44 detail to determine how they might become components of potential concept

1 plans. Of the six measures initially retained, five were chosen for further
2 development and inclusion in comprehensive plans. Measures are shown in
3 Figure 2-2, and their major components, accomplishments are described below.

- 4 • **Restore abandoned gravel mines along the Sacramento River –**
5 Protecting and restoring spawning and rearing habitat have been
6 identified by National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration
7 Fisheries as a primary goal in the recovery of Sacramento River winter-
8 run Chinook salmon. It is estimated that over 80 percent of the winter
9 Chinook spawning population migrates to the upper Sacramento River
10 when passage at the Red Bluff Diversion Dam is unobstructed.
11 Therefore, restoring suitable spawning habitat in the upstream reach of
12 the river has potential to benefit a large portion of the salmonid
13 population.

14 One method of increasing anadromous fish survival is rehabilitating
15 lands formerly mined for gravel along the Sacramento River. Instream
16 gravel mining degrades aquatic and floodplain habitat by (1) creating
17 large artificial pits along the river that disrupt natural geomorphic
18 processes and riparian regeneration, (2) stranding fish and encouraging
19 predation, and (3) removing valuable gravel sources. Aquatic
20 conditions at former gravel mining sites are typically unsuitable for
21 spawning and rearing. High fish mortality occurs at many abandoned
22 pits that effectively lose their connection with the river during low flow
23 periods, stranding fish and encouraging unnatural predation rates.
24 Because of changes in flow regime and reductions in coarse sediment
25 input, the river is not capable of refilling and restoring many of these
26 pits naturally. In addition, removing fine sediments during the gravel
27 extraction process inhibits establishment of riparian vegetation that
28 provides protective cover and shade for spawning and rearing.



1
 2 **Figure 2-2. Measures Retained to Address Primary Planning Objective – Anadromous**
 3 **Fish Survival**

1 Actions associated with this measure would help restore the natural
2 complexity required for a healthy, self-sustaining river ecosystem.
3 Actions would include filling deep pits (potentially requiring suitable
4 fill material to be imported from local sources), recontouring the stream
5 channel and floodplain to mimic natural conditions, and reconnecting
6 the reclaimed area to the Sacramento River. Side channels and other
7 features could be created to encourage spawning and rearing, and
8 restored floodplain lands could be revegetated using native plants. Soil
9 might need to be imported to replenish areas where gravel mining has
10 resulted in a considerable loss of fine sediments. Hydrologic, hydraulic,
11 and sedimentation studies would identify optimal restoration conditions
12 and any actions necessary to offset or minimize undesirable hydraulic
13 conditions caused by restoration.

14 This measure consists of acquiring, restoring, and reclaiming one or
15 more inactive gravel mining operations along the Sacramento River to
16 create valuable aquatic and floodplain habitat. Several potential sites
17 for gravel mine restoration along the Sacramento River between
18 Keswick and the RBPP listed in Table 2-2. Figure 2-3 shows an
19 example area for implementing this measure. Most of these sites consist
20 of one or more deep pits surrounded by partially disturbed land, with
21 the majority of sites consisting of disturbed lands that would require
22 minimal restoration actions. For this assessment, however, a potential
23 restoration area of 150 acres was considered. The exact size and
24 location(s) would be determined in further studies.

25 **Table 2-2. Potential Gravel Mine Restoration Sites Along the**
26 **Sacramento River**

| Location | Approximate River Mile | Bank | Area acres |
|--------------------------------|------------------------|-------|------------|
| Red Bluff near Salt Slough | 247 | Left | 140 |
| Upstream from Stillwater Creek | 282 | Right | 320 |
| Redding | 287-288 | Right | 135 |
| Redding | 287.5-288 | Left | 65 |
| Redding | 288.5-290.3 | Left | 305 |
| Redding | 292.5-294 | Left | 230 |

27



Source: M. Kondolf, 1989

Figure 2-3. Example of Abandoned Gravel Mine with Isolated Pits (left side of photo)

1
2
3
4
5 Primary accomplishments of gravel mine site restoration along the
6 upper Sacramento River would be to (1) improve spawning success by
7 increasing the amount of suitable spawning habitat along the
8 Sacramento River for anadromous fish and (2) improve the health and
9 vitality of self-sustaining riverside riparian ecosystems by restoring
10 their connection with natural geomorphologic processes.

11 This measure would support the primary planning objective of
12 increasing the survival of anadromous fish populations in the
13 Sacramento River by eliminating stranding and restoring spawning and
14 rearing habitat at one or more abandoned gravel pits. The measure also
15 would support the secondary planning objective of conserving and
16 restoring ecosystem resources along the upper Sacramento River
17 through restoring riparian and floodplain habitat.

18 Although this measure was initially retained and considerably
19 developed for inclusion in concept plans, as discussed above, it was
20 later deleted from further development during the comprehensive plans
21 phase. Subsequent evaluations related to the use of the SALMOD
22 model have indicated that restoring these areas may not result in a
23 significant benefit to anadromous fish. Concerns were also expressed
24 that ranged from a low likelihood that these areas could be effectively
25 used to increase spawning and rearing habitats to the likelihood for
26 increased predation. Further, during public and stakeholder outreach
27 meetings in late 2005 held primarily for environmental scoping
28 purposes, there was little to no interest expressed for acquisition and
29 restoring these areas. At this time, restoration of abandoned gravel
30 mines is not included in further plan formulation activities for the
31 SLWRI.

- 32
33
- **Construct instream aquatic habitat downstream from Keswick Dam** – This measure consists of constructing aquatic habitat in and

1 adjacent to the Sacramento River downstream from Keswick Dam to
2 encourage use of this reach by anadromous fish for spawning and
3 rearing. Habitat enhancements in this measure included floodplain,
4 riparian, and side channel habitats.

5 Side channels can support important habitat for anadromous salmonids,
6 including rearing and spawning habitat. Side channel habitats provide
7 refuge from predators and productive foraging habitat for juvenile
8 anadromous salmonids. Salmonids also seem to prefer the hydraulic
9 and channel bed conditions provided in side channels for spawning.

10 Riparian vegetation, including shaded riverine aquatic cover, provides
11 juvenile salmonids cover from predators, habitat complexity, a source
12 of insect prey, and shade for maintaining water temperatures within
13 suitable ranges for all life stages. Juvenile salmonids prefer riverine
14 habitat with abundant instream and overhead cover (e.g., undercut
15 banks, submerged and emergent vegetation, logs, roots, other woody
16 debris, and dense overhead vegetation) to provide refuge from
17 predators, and a sustained, abundant supply of invertebrate and larval
18 fish prey.

19 There is an opportunity to perform riparian and floodplain habitat
20 restoration along the Sacramento River downstream from Keswick
21 Dam to promote the health and vitality of the river ecosystem.
22 Locations near tributary confluences that are inundated by floods on a
23 fairly frequent basis would be targeted for restoration to maximize the
24 potential for long-term success and benefits. Restoration would include
25 replacing lost floodplain sediment, regrading or recontouring
26 floodplains that have been disconnected from the river, removing
27 berms or levees (as appropriate), and revegetating floodplain and
28 adjacent riparian areas. Locations for restoration would be in areas with
29 a 20 to 50 percent chance of flooding in any year to ensure riparian
30 habitat growth and regeneration. If the lands chosen for restoration are
31 not already in public ownership, land acquisition and/or easements may
32 be required to implement the measure and ensure continued benefits.

33 This measure would support the secondary objective to conserve and
34 restore ecosystem resources along the upper Sacramento River by
35 restoring native riparian habitat, side channels, and associated
36 floodplain lands. Riparian habitat also contributes to the quality of
37 instream aquatic habitat, providing shade and a source of woody debris;
38 therefore, this measure may also support the primary study objective to
39 increase the survival of anadromous fish in the Sacramento River.

- 40 • **Replenish spawning gravel in the Sacramento River** – The
41 restoration of aquatic habitat between Keswick Dam and the RBPP is
42 of high priority because this stretch is one of the few remaining

1 spawning corridors available to anadromous fish along the Sacramento
2 River. This measure would support the primary objective of increasing
3 the survival of anadromous fish populations in the Sacramento River by
4 contributing to replenishing spawning gravels used by anadromous
5 fish.

6 Historically, the tributary watersheds upstream from Keswick and
7 Shasta Dams provided a source of gravel and other coarse sediments to
8 the Sacramento River. Gravels were continually replenished as they
9 moved down the river system. Gravel recruitment is of particular
10 importance to anadromous fish, which require clean gravels for their
11 spawning beds. Dams, river diversions, gravel mining, and other
12 obstructions have blocked or reduced natural gravel sources. Suitable
13 spawning gravel has been identified as a potential limiting factor in the
14 recovery of anadromous fish populations on the Sacramento River.
15 Several other programs, including CALFED and the Anadromous Fish
16 Restoration Program, have provided gravel replenishment on the
17 Sacramento River in selected locations.

18 There are opportunities to replenish spawning gravel in the Sacramento
19 River and along the lower reaches of its tributaries. The reach
20 immediately downstream from Keswick Dam has no natural gravel
21 sources and provides marginal spawning habitat. These gravel sources
22 could be artificially augmented by gravel injections.

23 This measure would involve transporting and placing gravel into the
24 Sacramento River downstream from Keswick Dam. Actions would
25 include placing suitable gravels into the Sacramento River immediately
26 below Keswick Dam. Structural treatments may be required below
27 Keswick Dam to prevent the gravel from being washed downstream.
28 Temporary construction easements could be required. Suitable
29 spawning gravel would consist of uncrushed, natural river rock, washed
30 and placed in the river at strategic locations. Hydraulic and
31 geomorphic evaluations are needed to determine the most effective
32 gravel size distribution and the most appropriate locations for gravel
33 placement. The size and amount of gravel is first determined by the
34 hydraulic characteristics of the river at the injection site and
35 secondarily by the spawning characteristics of the targeted fish species.
36 For the purpose of this evaluation, it is estimated that a total of 10,000
37 tons of gravel between 1 inch and 3 inches in diameter would be
38 injected at one site.

39 Replenishing gravel in relatively stable reaches that lack natural gravel
40 sources, preferably those with complex structures or large woody
41 debris to trap and retain gravel, would increase the success and
42 longevity of the measure. The reach immediately downstream from
43 Keswick Dam has no natural gravel sources and currently provides

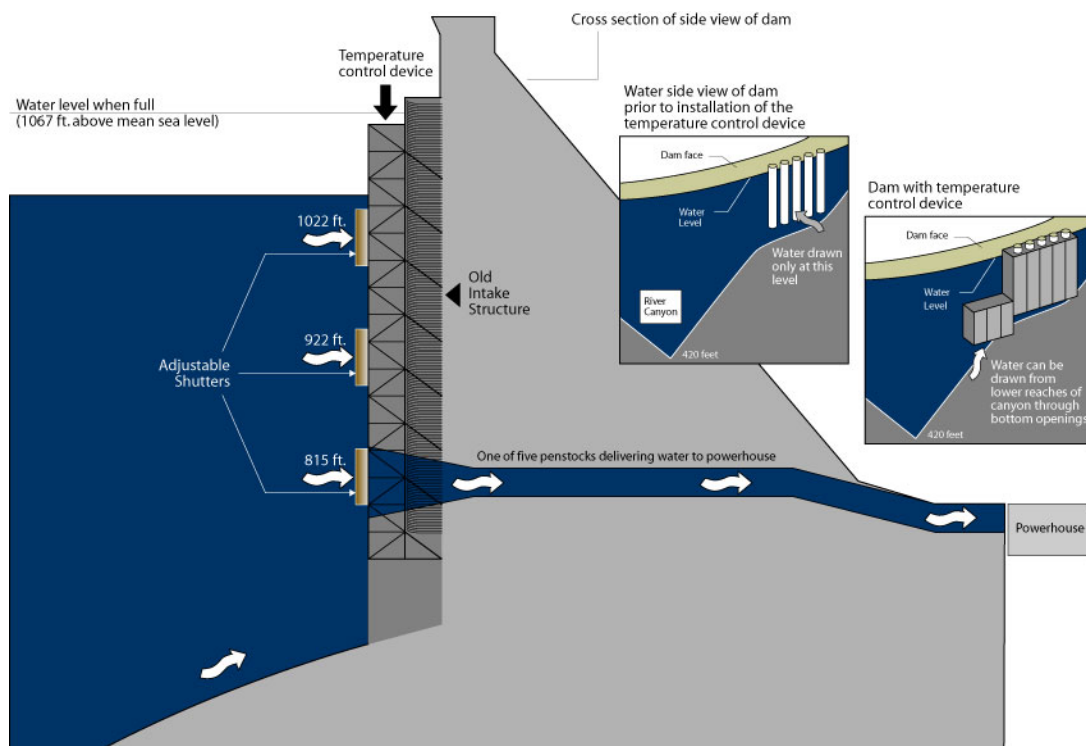
1 marginal spawning habitat. Gravel placement would be concentrated in
2 this uppermost reach, between Anderson and Keswick Dam. Gravel is
3 typically moved downstream from the site of placement by high flows
4 that occur, on average, about every 5 years. However, added spawning
5 gravels continue to benefit the stream environment as they move
6 through a river system, although the benefits tend to be less distinct
7 farther downstream.

8 This measure would support the primary planning objective of
9 increasing the survival of anadromous fish populations in the
10 Sacramento River by restoring spawning gravels in stream channels
11 that no longer have adequate gravel resources. After water
12 temperature, the presence and quality of spawning gravel is probably
13 the most important factor contributing to the reproductive success of
14 anadromous fish.

- 15 • **Make additional modifications to Shasta Dam for temperature**
16 **control** – Adverse water temperature conditions in the upper
17 Sacramento River have been identified as a critical factor leading to
18 decline of anadromous fish species. As demand for CVP water has
19 increased over time, the ability to maintain suitable water temperatures
20 downstream from Keswick Dam for salmonids has become
21 increasingly difficult. The NMFS 1993 BO for CVP and SWP
22 operations (NMFS 1993) established water temperature criteria for the
23 Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and Bend Bridge, or points
24 upstream from Bend Bridge depending on climatic and water storage
25 conditions. These water temperature requirements were reinforced by
26 the subsequent 2004 and 2009 NMFS BOs for CVP and SWP
27 operations. The existing TCD at Shasta Dam, shown in Figures 2-4
28 and 2-5, was constructed from 1996 to 1998 to help meet requirements
29 of the 1993 BO.



30
31 **Figure 2-4. TCD Located on Upstream Face**
32 **of Shasta Dam**



1
2 **Figure 2-5. Shasta Dam Temperature Control Device**

3 This measure consists of first assessing if modifications to the TCD are
4 possible and feasible and, if so, implementing those modifications. This
5 measure could be highly effective when combined with measures to
6 increase storage space in Shasta Reservoir. For relatively small raises
7 of Shasta Dam, the existing TCD structure would be retrofitted to
8 account for additional dam height and to reduce leakage of warm water
9 into the structure, but no new structure would be needed. However,
10 modifications to the existing structure are more likely to become
11 necessary for increasingly higher dam raises. For dam raises higher
12 than about 50 feet, it is believed that major modifications to the TCD
13 would be needed to manage the increasing depth and volume of water.
14 Accordingly, modifications under this measure for higher dam raises
15 would include widening the existing structure to increase intake
16 capacity, and extending the device to a greater depth. In addition, this
17 measure would provide for added structural modifications to the outlets
18 at Shasta Dam for the purpose of temperature control.

19 Accomplishments of this measure would be to increase survival of
20 anadromous fish populations in the Sacramento River by (1) increasing
21 the ability of operators at Shasta Dam to meet downstream temperature
22 requirements for anadromous fish, (2) providing more flexibility in
23 achieving desirable water temperatures during critical spawning,
24 rearing, and out-migration, and (3) extending the area of suitable
25 spawning habitat farther downstream in the Sacramento River.

1 This measure would support the primary planning objective of
2 increasing survival of anadromous fish populations in the Sacramento
3 River. Also, it would complement potential measures to increase
4 storage in Shasta Dam because additional temperature control
5 improvements could be incorporated into the design of a dam raise and
6 further improve cold-water releases. This measure would combine well
7 with measures to improve aquatic spawning habitat in the Sacramento
8 River because better water temperature regulation could allow
9 anadromous fish to take greater advantage of these habitat
10 improvements. This measure would not conflict with other
11 environmental restoration measures or other known programs or
12 projects on the upper Sacramento River.

- 13 • **Enlarge Shasta Lake cold-water pool** – Cold water released from
14 Shasta Dam considerably influences water temperature conditions on
15 the Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and the RBPP. This
16 measure includes increasing the volume of the cold-water pool in
17 Shasta Lake by raising Shasta Dam and enlarging Shasta Lake
18 primarily to help maintain colder releases for anadromous fish during
19 certain periods. Increased storage volume could also help increase
20 seasonal flows during dry and critical years in the upper Sacramento
21 River that are important to fish populations.

22 Possible operational changes to the timing and magnitude of releases
23 from Shasta Dam, primarily to improve the quality of aquatic habitat,
24 could be applied under an adaptive management plan. Changes in
25 operating the cold-water pool could include increasing minimum flows,
26 timing releases out of Shasta Dam to mimic more natural seasonal
27 flows, meeting flow targets for side channels, or retaining the
28 additional water in storage to meet temperature requirements.
29 Reclamation would manage the cold-water pool each year based on
30 recommendations from the SRTTG.

31 Dam raises ranging from about 6.5 feet to about 200 feet have been
32 considered in previous studies by Reclamation. A dam raise of about
33 6.5 feet, as suggested in the CALFED ROD, would increase storage by
34 about 256,000 acre-feet. A dam raise of about 200 feet would increase
35 storage by about 9.3 MAF. The increased cold-water pool could be
36 used to meet existing or proposed temperature targets or provide
37 additional cold-water discharges during the summer, which could
38 considerably extend the downstream reach of suitable spawning habitat.
39 Increased volume could also help meet minimum flows in late fall in
40 the upper Sacramento River.

41 Raising Shasta Dam and enlarging Shasta Lake would result in impacts
42 to natural resources and infrastructure around the reservoir rim,
43 potentially requiring considerable mitigation and relocations. Impacts

1 associated with dam raises of less than about 18 feet would be
2 significant but likely manageable. Higher dam raises would result in
3 major impacts to reservoir area resources and infrastructure, reducing
4 the likelihood of economic justification. In addition to extreme impacts
5 in the Shasta Lake area, very high dam raises (100 to 200 feet) might
6 also result in major impacts to natural resources along the Sacramento
7 River downstream from the dam. These impacts would likely eliminate
8 serious consideration of high dam raises.

9 This measure would support the primary planning objective of
10 increasing survival of anadromous fish populations by (1) improving
11 water temperature control, (2) extending suitable spawning habitat, and
12 (3) improving overall physical aquatic habitat conditions in the
13 Sacramento River. It also would support the primary planning objective
14 of increasing water supply reliability. The estimated certainty of this
15 measure in achieving its intended accomplishments would be high.

16 This measure would complement the other primary and secondary
17 planning objectives. Also, it would combine favorably with measures
18 aimed at changing the timing and magnitude of releases from the
19 increased pool, which would improve the quality of spawning and
20 rearing habitat, increase attraction flows that cue in-migration, and
21 improve water temperatures that cue out-migration. This measure
22 would not conflict with other ecosystem restoration measures that were
23 preliminarily retained, nor does it conflict with other known programs
24 or projects on the upper Sacramento River.

- 25 • **Modify storage and release operations at Shasta Dam** – In addition
26 to water temperature, flow conditions in the upper Sacramento River
27 are important in addressing anadromous fish needs. Timing and
28 magnitude of river flows are important to successful spawning and
29 rearing of anadromous fish populations. This measure consists of
30 enlarging Shasta Dam and modifying seasonal storage and releases to
31 benefit anadromous fisheries in the Sacramento River by providing
32 greater flexibility in achieving desirable river flows that would improve
33 and expand suitable spawning and rearing habitat.

34 Changes would be made to the timing and magnitude of releases
35 performed to maintain target flows in spawning areas, and to improve
36 the quality and quantity of aquatic habitat. Nearly all winter-run, and by
37 far the majority of the spring-run and late-fall-run salmon in the
38 Sacramento River, spawn in the reach upstream from the confluence
39 with Battle and Cottonwood Creeks. It is within this reach of river that
40 the measure would be most effective by reducing the frequency and
41 magnitude of habitat dewatering. The quality of aquatic habitat could
42 be further improved by cleaning spawning gravels. This measure could
43 also include release changes during the flood season to permit “pulse

1 flows” and other releases that could improve aquatic habitat conditions.
2 Further, the measure could help provide additional control and dilution
3 of acid mine drainage from Spring Creek.

4 Shasta Dam operates for multiple objectives, including water supply,
5 flood control, water temperature, hydropower, and others. Modifying
6 existing storage and release operations could adversely impact water
7 supply reliability to agricultural and M&I uses or other beneficial uses
8 of the water stored in the reservoir, which would be contrary to SLWRI
9 goals and objectives. Therefore, this measure would need to include
10 enlarging the storage space in Shasta Reservoir to mitigate potential
11 adverse impacts to water supply reliability. This measure would not
12 conflict with any ecosystem restoration measures that were
13 preliminarily retained, nor would it conflict with other known programs
14 or projects on the upper Sacramento River.

15 The estimated certainty of this measure in achieving its intended
16 accomplishments would be moderate. The relationship between
17 minimum river flows and increased survivability of salmon is not clear
18 because many factors affect anadromous fish populations. Further,
19 successful implementation would be highly dependent on the extent of
20 dam modifications and reoperation that could be implemented while
21 offsetting or minimizing adverse impacts to water supply or
22 hydropower.

23 This measure was initially deleted from consideration because analyses
24 indicated a decreased fisheries benefit with increasing Sacramento
25 River flows compared to increasing the cold-water pool. However, this
26 measure was subsequently retained as part of an adaptive management
27 strategy for operation of the cold-water pool in Shasta Reservoir.
28 Changes in operating the cold-water pool could include increasing
29 minimum flows, timing releases out of Shasta Dam to mimic more
30 natural seasonal flows, meeting flow targets for side channels, or
31 retaining the additional water in storage to meet temperature objectives.

32 **Increase Water Supply Reliability**

33 Various potential water management measures were identified to address the
34 primary objective of increasing water supply reliability for M&I, agricultural,
35 and environmental purposes to help meet current and future water demands. Of
36 22 measures considered to help increase water supply reliability (see Table 2-3),
37 four were retained for possible inclusion in concept plans. Rationale is
38 discussed for retaining or deleting measures in this section.

39 ***Measures Considered***

40 Following is a brief discussion of the measures considered, which are separated
41 into eight categories: (1) increased surface water storage, (2) reservoir
42 reoperation, (3) improved conjunctive water management, (4) coordinated

1 operation and precipitation enhancement, (5) demand reduction, (6) improved
2 water purchases and transfers, (7) improved Delta export and conveyance, and
3 (8) improved surface water treatment. Also included are additional descriptions
4 of the three measures retained for further consideration.

5 **Increase Surface Water Storage** Measures identified to increase surface
6 water storages are described below.

- 7 • **Increase conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir by raising**
8 **Shasta Dam** – This measure consists of increasing the amount of
9 available space for conservation storage in Shasta Reservoir through
10 raising Shasta Dam. A range of potential dam raises has been
11 considered in previous studies, including raises of more than 200 feet.
12 A raise of 6.5 feet is included in the Preferred Program Alternative for
13 the CALFED ROD (2000). Raising Shasta Dam would contribute
14 directly to the primary planning objectives, and previous studies have
15 indicated that raising the dam would be technically feasible. Raising
16 Shasta Dam also could contribute to the secondary planning objectives.
17 In addition, there is likely strong Federal and non-Federal interest in
18 this measure. Therefore, this measure was retained for further
19 development.

20

Table 2-3. Management Measures Addressing the Primary Planning Objective of Increasing Water Supply Reliability

| Management Measure | Potential to Address Planning Objective | Status/Rationale |
|--|--|--|
| Increase Surface Water Storage | | |
| Increase conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir by raising Shasta Dam | Very High – Raising dam directly contributes to increased water supply reliability. | Retained – Consistent with primary planning objective and directly contributes to secondary planning objectives. |
| Construct new conservation storage reservoir(s) upstream from Shasta Reservoir | Very Low – Limited potential to effectively contribute to increased system water supply reliability or other planning objectives. | Deleted – Upstream storage sites capable of CVP system-wide benefits would be very costly, result in environmental impacts difficult to mitigate, and would be inconsistent with the CALFED ROD. |
| Construct new conservation storage on tributaries to the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam | Low – Several sites/projects, including Auburn Dam Project, have demonstrated an ability to contribute to system water supply reliability. | Deleted – Although potentially feasible sites/projects exist that could increase water supply reliability, considerable overriding environmental and socioeconomic issues restrict implementation at this time. |
| Construct new conservation offstream surface storage near the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam | Moderate to High – Although not as effective as additional storage at Shasta, there is potential for offstream storage projects (NODOS) to contribute to increasing water supply reliability. | Deleted – Not as efficient as developing additional storage in Shasta Dam. NODOS being pursued as added increment to system through a separate feasibility-scope study initiated under Public Law 108-361. |
| Construct new conservation surface water storage south of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta | Moderate – Potential for surface water storage projects (upper San Joaquin River) to contribute to increasing water supply reliability to CVP primarily in the San Joaquin Valley and Tulare Lake basin area. | Deleted – Not an effective alternative to additional storage at Shasta. Does not contribute to other planning objectives. Upper San Joaquin River being pursued as added increment to system through feasibility-scope study initiated under Public Law 108-361. |
| Increase total or seasonal conservation storage at other CVP facilities | Moderate – Would require several projects to contribute to water supply reliability (e.g., raise Folsom and Berryessa). | Deleted – Not an efficient alternative to increasing storage in Shasta Reservoir; considerably higher unit cost for increased water supply. Known efforts to increase space in other Northern California CVP (or SWP) reservoirs rejected by CALFED. |
| Dredge bottom of Shasta Reservoir | Very Low – Limited potential to effectively contribute to increases in system water supply reliability or any other planning objective. | Deleted – Extremely high cost for very small potential benefit and severe environmental impacts. |
| Reoperate Reservoir | | |
| Increase the effective conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir by increasing the efficiency of reservoir operation for water supply reliability | Moderate to High – Potential for increment of increased water supply reliability at Shasta Reservoir. | Retained – Although potential for increased water supply reliability is limited, added opportunities exist for increased flood control and other management elements. |
| Increase the conservation pool in Shasta Reservoir by encroaching on dam freeboard | Very Low – Very small space increase possible. | Deleted – Very limited potential to encroach on existing freeboard above full pool, which is only 9.5 feet. High relative cost to resolve uncertainty issues related to encroachment. |
| Increase conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir by reallocating space from flood control | Low – Space reallocated to water supply could contribute to increased water supply reliability. | Deleted – Very low potential for implementation due to considerable adverse impacts on flood control. |
| Improve Conjunctive Water Management | | |
| Develop conservation offstream surface storage near the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam | Moderate – Potential to enhance system yield when combined with new storage and reoperation of Shasta. | Deleted – Implementing additional surface water storage project increment for Shasta would not be as efficient as new storage in Shasta Reservoir. Potential for shared storage in NODOS project is being considered in separate feasibility study initiated under Public Law 108-7. |
| Develop conservation groundwater storage near the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam | Moderate to High – Considerable potential to enhance system yield when combined with new storage and reoperation of Shasta. | Deleted – This measure was initially retained for inclusion in concept plans, then eliminated in the comprehensive plans phase due to subsequent operations modeling indicating trade-offs between conjunctive use water supply benefits and critical gains in fisheries accomplishments. |
| Develop additional conservation groundwater storage south of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta | Moderate – Potential to enhance system yield when combined with new storage and reoperation of Shasta. | Deleted – Not as effective as storage north of the Delta and would not contribute to other study objectives. |
| Coordinate Operation and Precipitation Enhancement | | |
| Improve Delta export and conveyance capability through coordinated CVP and SWP operations | Moderate – Potential to enhance system yield when combined with new storage and reoperation of Shasta. | Deleted – Joint point of diversion is being actively pursued in other programs. A likely without-project condition. |
| Implement additional precipitation enhancement | Low – Low potential to provide improvements to drought period water supply reliability. | Deleted – Not an effective alternative to new storage. Very limited potential to benefit drought period water supply reliability. Being actively pursued under without-project condition. |

This page left blank intentionally.

Table 2-3. Management Measures Addressing the Primary Planning Objective of Increasing Water Supply Reliability (contd.)

| Management Measure | Potential to Address Planning Objective | Status/Rationale |
|---|---|--|
| Reduce Demand | | |
| Implement water use efficiency methods | Moderate – Potential to benefit overall State water supply issues. | Retained – Although water use efficiency does not add to increased supplies, conservation is being actively pursued through other programs. Conservation needs to be considered as an element of any plan considered in addressing California’s future water picture. |
| Retire agricultural lands | Moderate – Would reduce water demand rather than increase ability to meet projected future demands. | Deleted – Not an alternative to new storage. Does not address planning objectives and constraints/criteria. Land retirement test programs being performed by Reclamation. On a large scale, could have considerable negative impacts on agricultural industry. |
| Improve Water Transfers and Purchases | | |
| Transfer water between users | Very Low – Does not generate an increase in water supply reliability. | Deleted – Not an alternative to new water sources or reliable substitute for new storage at Shasta Reservoir. Will likely be accomplished with or without additional efforts to develop new sources. |
| Expand Delta Export and Conveyance Facilities | | |
| Expand Banks Pumping Plant | Moderate – Potential to help increase water supply reliability south of the Delta. | Deleted – Not an alternative to new storage north of the Delta. Does not address planning objectives or constraints/principles/criteria. Will likely be accomplished with or without additional efforts to develop new sources. |
| Construct DMC/CA intertie | Moderate – Potential to help increase water supply reliability south of the Delta. | Deleted – Not an alternative to new storage north of the Delta. Does not address planning objectives or constraints/principles/criteria. Will likely be accomplished with or without additional efforts to develop new sources. |
| Improve Surface Water Treatment | | |
| Implement treatment/supply of agricultural drainage water | Very Low – Very low potential to improve water supply reliability for agricultural uses. | Deleted – Not a viable alternative to new water storage. Very high unit water cost. |
| Construct desalination facility | Low – Although growing new source for urban water supplies in State, low potential to address SLWRI planning objectives. | Deleted – Not an alternative measure for drought period supplies. Not an alternative to new storage at Shasta. Very high unit water cost. |

Key:
CALFED = CALFED Bay-Delta Program
CVP = Central Valley Project
Delta = Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta
DMC/CA = Delta-Mendota Canal/California Aqueduct
NODOS = North-of-the-Delta Offstream Storage
Reclamation = U.S. Department of the Interior, Bureau of Reclamation
ROD = Record of Decision
SLWRI = Shasta Lake Water Resources Investigation
State = State of California
SWP = State Water Project

This page left blank intentionally.

- 1
- 2
- 3
- 4
- 5
- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- 18
- 19
- 20
- 21
- 22
- 23
- 24
- 25
- 26
- 27
- 28
- 29
- **Construct new conservation storage reservoir(s) upstream from Shasta Reservoir** – This measure consists of constructing dams and reservoirs at one or more locations upstream from Shasta Lake, primarily for increased water conservation storage and operational flexibility. Numerous reservoir storage projects have been considered and many constructed in the watershed upstream from Shasta Lake. Three of the most promising remaining sites include Allen Camp Reservoir (180,000 acre-feet on the Pit River in Modoc County), Kosk Reservoir (800,000 acre-feet on the Pit River in Shasta County), and Squaw Valley Reservoir (400,000 acre-feet on Squaw Valley Creek in Shasta County). These three potential project sites were deleted from further consideration because they (1) would only be capable of marginally improving water supply reliability to the CVP, (2) would not be consistent with screening criteria established in the CALFED Integrated Storage Investigations, (3) would likely not be supported in the local area because the water would need to be developed for CVP system reliability (not retained for local use), and (4) would result in a relatively high unit water cost to implement. In addition to the above three potential projects, an additional offstream storage site at Goose Valley near Burney was suggested to the SLWRI Product Delivery Team during a stakeholder meeting in Redding. A cursory evaluation indicated, however, that at a potential full pool storage of about 230,000 acre-feet, and with a generous estimate of available river flows available for diversion from the Pit River to the site, likely costs to develop the project would exceed water supply benefits by at least 2 to 1. Further, although larger sizes of a project at the Goose Valley site are physically feasible, there is little potential for water to fill the facility. Accordingly, this site was not considered further and this measure was deleted from further consideration in the SLWRI.
- 30
- **Construct new conservation storage on tributaries to the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam** – Numerous onstream surface water storage projects along tributaries to the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam have been investigated in past studies. Several projects have potential to contribute considerably to increasing water supply reliability, including the Cottonwood Creek Project (1.6 MAF on Cottonwood Creek north of Red Bluff), the Auburn Dam Project (up to about 2.3 MAF on the Middle Fork American River near Sacramento), and the Marysville Lake Project (920,000 acre-feet on the Yuba River near Marysville). Although each of these potential projects could considerably contribute to increasing the water supply reliability of the CVP and SWP systems, they have been rejected by State and local interests as potential candidates for new water sources. Each was eliminated from further consideration in the SLWRI primarily because they would not contribute to the primary planning objectives or because they would
- 31
- 32
- 33
- 34
- 35
- 36
- 37
- 38
- 39
- 40
- 41
- 42
- 43
- 44
- 45

1 have significant overriding environmental issues and opposition. This
2 measure was deleted from further consideration in the SLWRI.

- 3 • **Construct new conservation offstream surface storage near the**
4 **Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam** – Various
5 offstream reservoir storage projects have been evaluated in previous
6 studies. All but one of the offstream reservoir storage projects were
7 eliminated from further consideration in the CALFED ROD, primarily
8 because of project cost considerations, potential environmental impacts,
9 and lands and relocation issues. The one project retained for further
10 consideration in the ROD is Sites Reservoir, with a storage capacity of
11 up to 1.8 MAF. DWR is studying Sites Reservoir and alternatives
12 under the North-of-the-Delta Offstream Storage (NODOS) Project.
13 Sites Reservoir would be filled primarily by water diverted from the
14 Sacramento River and tributaries during periods of excess flows
15 through the Tehama-Colusa Canal, Glenn-Colusa Irrigation District
16 Canal, and/or a new pipeline near Maxwell. Another potential source of
17 water for filling the reservoir is moving (predelivery) Tehama-Colusa
18 Canal Authority and Glenn-Colusa Irrigation District water from Shasta
19 Reservoir during the spring and storing it at Sites Reservoir for delivery
20 during the irrigation season. Reclamation received Federal feasibility
21 study authority for NODOS under Section 215 of PL 108-7 in
22 September 2003. NODOS has the potential to increase the water supply
23 reliability of Sacramento Valley users, the CVP, and SWP; improve
24 Delta water quality; contribute to ecosystem restoration; and provide
25 water to support the Environmental Water Account. The emphasis of
26 the objectives of the NODOS project are different than those of Shasta
27 enlargement; NODOS would not be a substitute for enlarging Shasta
28 Dam and Reservoir and was eliminated from further consideration in
29 the SLWRI.

- 30 • **Construct new conservation surface water storage south of the**
31 **Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta** – A relatively large portion of the
32 CVP’s future water needs is located in service areas in the San Joaquin
33 River basin, south of the Delta. In addition, large demands will
34 continue to be made, primarily on the SWP, to provide water for M&I
35 purposes farther south via the California Aqueduct and for increased
36 water supply reliability to the South Bay areas. A portion of these
37 demands could be provided by onstream and/or offstream surface water
38 storage within the San Joaquin River basin. Numerous surface water
39 storage sites have been identified in the past along the east and west
40 sides of the San Joaquin Valley and in areas to the west of the Delta
41 near Stockton.

42 Potential onstream storage sites are exclusively located on the east side
43 of the valley due to the lack of substantial annual runoff from the Coast
44 Range. Several potential onstream storage sites could include enlarging

1 Pardee Reservoir on the Mokelumne River, enlarging and modifying
2 Farmington Dam on Littlejohns Creek, and additional storage on the
3 upper San Joaquin River. Numerous potential offstream storage sites
4 also have been considered in the San Joaquin Valley. Several potential
5 sites have been identified on the east side of the valley and would
6 receive diverted flows from nearby rivers, but most sites are on the
7 west side of the valley and designed to receive pumped water primarily
8 from the California Aqueduct during periods of excess flows. Potential
9 sites would include Los Vaqueros enlargement, Ingram Canyon
10 Reservoir, Quinto Creek Reservoir, and Panoche Reservoir.

11 All of the potential onstream or offstream storage projects south of the
12 Delta were deleted from further consideration primarily because they
13 would not (1) contribute to the objectives of the SLWRI or (2) be as
14 efficient or effective as additional storage in an enlarged Shasta
15 Reservoir. In addition, feasibility-scope investigations for both Los
16 Vaqueros Reservoir and upper San Joaquin River storage were
17 authorized in Section 215 of Public Law 108-7. Both studies are
18 addressing specific planning objectives that are unique to their
19 geographic areas, but differ from those of the SLWRI.

- 20 • **Increase total or seasonal conservation storage at other CVP**
21 **facilities** – This measure primarily consists of providing additional
22 conservation storage space in other major CVP (and/or SWP) reservoirs
23 in the Sacramento River watershed through enlarging existing dams
24 and reservoirs. Besides Shasta Dam and Lake, projects primarily would
25 include additional storage in facilities such as Lake Berryessa on Putah
26 Creek, Folsom Lake on the American River, Trinity Lake on the Trinity
27 River, and Lake Oroville on the Feather River. It is believed that, of the
28 existing reservoirs in the CVP/SWP systems, increasing water supply
29 reliability through modifying Shasta Dam and Lake would be the most
30 cost-effective. Further, all known efforts to increase storage space in
31 other Northern California CVP (or SWP) reservoirs were rejected by
32 CALFED and local interest groups. For these reasons, and because this
33 measure would not address all SLWRI planning objectives, constraints,
34 principles, and criteria, this measure was deleted from further
35 consideration in the SLWRI.

- 36 • **Dredge bottom of Shasta Reservoir** – This measure consists of
37 increasing the total storage space in Shasta Reservoir by excavating
38 either deposited or native materials below full pool elevation. In
39 general, this measure is not practical for large impoundments due to
40 cost; however, it is included here for completeness and because it was a
41 specific request in the environmental scoping process. For comparison
42 purposes, an estimate was made that considered removing 100,000
43 acre-feet of dredged material from Shasta Reservoir. This volume in
44 Shasta Reservoir would result in approximately 22,000 acre-feet per

1 year of additional drought period yield to the CVP. An increased
2 volume of 100,000 acre-feet is about 160 million cubic yards, or the
3 equivalent volume of the area of a football field over 14 miles high.
4 Excavation costs vary widely depending on the type of material and
5 location of excavation. Soil that is movable by scraper machines can be
6 excavated and dumped locally for about \$3 per yard while dredged soil
7 costs much more, over \$10 per yard, and rock excavates are about \$10
8 per yard. Assuming that Shasta Reservoir is drawn down and half of the
9 volume is removed by scraper and half by excavation, and then
10 assuming transport and disposal of the material locally at an additional
11 cost of approximately \$3 yard, this measure would have a total cost of
12 about \$1.5 billion. This cost does not include any real estate costs or
13 expenditures to mitigate for drawing down Shasta Lake or for the
14 disposal of the materials. In addition, the soil and rock could not be
15 sold because no need exists for this quantity of fill, and local fill
16 sources are usually available. The resulting equivalent cost of
17 increasing water supply reliability would be nearly \$5,000 per acre-
18 foot. This unit cost is multiple times greater than that of other sources.
19 Accordingly, this measure was deleted from further consideration.

20 **Reoperate Reservoir** The three measures described below involve increasing
21 the conservation storage space by altering the operations of Shasta Dam and
22 Reservoir.

23 • **Increase the effective conservation storage space in Shasta**
24 **Reservoir by increasing the efficiency of reservoir operations for**
25 **water supply reliability** – This measure consists of changing the flood
26 control operations of Shasta Dam and Reservoir (without reducing the
27 maximum flood pool) with a goal of increasing water supply reliability.
28 This measure would focus on revising the operation rules for flood
29 control such that the facility could potentially be managed more
30 efficiently for flood control, thereby freeing some seasonal storage
31 space for water supply. A primary constraint would be to ensure no
32 adverse impacts to the existing level of flood protection provided by the
33 Shasta Dam project. It is believed that some degree of operational
34 efficiency could be gained through a critical assessment of reservoir
35 operations using more current analytical and weather forecasting tools.
36 Although the potential for increased water supply reliability through
37 reoperation efficiencies for flood control is believed to be limited, this
38 measure was retained for further detailed consideration for possible
39 inclusion in concept plans.

40 • **Increase conservation pool in Shasta Reservoir by encroaching on**
41 **dam freeboard** – This measure consists of increasing the conservation
42 storage space in Shasta Reservoir by raising the full pool elevation
43 without raising Shasta Dam. The current full pool elevation at Shasta
44 Dam is 1,067 feet above mean sea level (elevation 1,067) and the top-

1 of-dam elevation is approximately elevation 1,076.5. Accordingly, the
2 design freeboard above maximum water surface elevation is 9.5 feet. It
3 is estimated that major modifications would be required to the dam and
4 appurtenances to allow operational encroachments on the design
5 freeboard of the dam, only to gain a small potential increase in
6 reservoir storage. This measure was deleted from further consideration
7 primarily because it would have low potential to effectively address the
8 planning objective.

- 9 • **Increase the conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir by**
10 **reallocating space from flood control** – This measure consists of
11 decreasing the maximum seasonal flood control storage space in Shasta
12 Reservoir and dedicating that space to water supply reliability in the
13 CVP. It also includes constructing flood protection features along the
14 Sacramento River to mitigate for potential induced flood damages. The
15 maximum seasonal flood control storage space in Shasta is 1.3 MAF
16 from December 1 through March 20, depending on accumulated
17 seasonal inflow volumes. Reducing seasonal flood control storage
18 space would reduce the ability of the reservoir to control peak flood
19 flow releases. This would result in an increase in the frequency of
20 flooding and flood damages along the Sacramento River downstream
21 from Shasta Dam. This measure was deleted from further consideration
22 in the SLWRI primarily because of its likely adverse impacts on flood
23 controls.

24 **Improve Conjunctive Water Management** The following three measures
25 were identified to improve conjunctive water management.

- 26 • **Develop conservation offstream surface storage near the**
27 **Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam** – This measure
28 consists of developing surface water transfer storage capabilities near
29 the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam to use in
30 conjunction with storage in Shasta Reservoir. This storage would be an
31 extension of storage space in Shasta Reservoir. Water temporarily
32 stored or “parked” in the transfer storage facility would be delivered to
33 local CVP contractors in substitution for their current diversions via
34 either the Anderson-Cottonwood Irrigation District facilities or
35 Tehama-Colusa Canal water users facilities. Water not diverted from
36 the water users would remain in the Sacramento River to benefit
37 anadromous fish, for delivery to downstream water users, and/or for
38 Delta water quality. One possibility identified would be to consider
39 some of the space in the Sites Reservoir project, or NODOS, which was
40 previously described as conjunctive use storage for Shasta. This
41 possibility is being considered in studies by DWR. However,
42 development of a separate surface water storage project or space in the
43 Sites Project expressly as part of the SLWRI is believed to be
44 inconsistent with the planning objectives and constraints for the

1 SLWRI. Accordingly, this measure was deleted from further
2 consideration in the SLWRI. It continues to be considered, however, as
3 part of the NODOS project.

- 4 • **Develop conservation groundwater storage near the Sacramento**
5 **River downstream from Shasta Dam** – This measure consists of
6 developing groundwater storage near the Sacramento River. Similar to
7 the surface storage measure described above, releases from Shasta Dam
8 would be diverted from the Sacramento River and used to recharge
9 local groundwater rather than be stored in a surface water facility.
10 During drought periods, stored groundwater would be pumped for local
11 uses. This pumped water would be substituted for surface water that
12 would have otherwise been diverted from the Sacramento River during
13 the irrigation season. Several options have been identified. One option
14 would be similar to surface water conjunctive use storage except
15 diverted water would be stored in groundwater basins adjacent to the
16 Sacramento River. However, this option would be very costly because
17 of the amount of land or land rights required. Another option would be
18 to work with existing water contractors in the Sacramento River valley
19 to exchange surface water for in-lieu pumped groundwater, depending
20 on the water year.

21 The in-lieu option of this measure was retained primarily because it
22 would have potential to increase water supply reliability and would be
23 consistent with the identified plan formulation constraints and criteria.
24 Also, it would be consistent with CALFED goals for the water storage
25 component of the August 2000 ROD and would not conflict with other
26 planning objectives.

- 27 • **Develop additional conservation groundwater storage south of the**
28 **Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta** – This measure consists of either
29 developing new groundwater recharge projects south of the Delta or
30 contributing to existing recharge projects. It would include diverting
31 flows during periods of excess from the San Joaquin River, Delta-
32 Mendota Canal (DMC), or California Aqueduct and helping recharge
33 depleted groundwater basins. It is believed that this measure would
34 have limited potential to allow storage from modifying Shasta to be
35 temporally stored south of the Delta for later use during critical dry
36 periods. Conjunctively using water in the DMC or California Aqueduct
37 has been pursued in other CALFED programs. These conjunctive use
38 scenarios would not be considerably influenced by added system
39 storage north of the Delta. This measure would not be as effective or
40 efficient as increased storage space in Shasta Reservoir and would not
41 contribute to the other primary planning objective. Accordingly, this
42 measure was deleted from further consideration in the SLWRI because
43 it would not effectively address primary planning objectives of the
44 SLWRI.

1 **Coordinate Operation and Precipitation Enhancement** The two measures
2 discussed below involve coordinating operations and precipitation
3 enhancement.

- 4 • **Improve Delta export and conveyance capability through**
5 **coordinated CVP and SWP operations** – This measure primarily
6 consists of improving Delta export and conveyance capability through a
7 more effective coordinated management of surplus flows in the Delta.
8 A specific application of the measure would be the joint point of
9 diversion. Joint point of diversion operations would allow Federal and
10 State water managers to use excess or available capacity in their
11 respective south Delta diversion facilities at the Jones and Banks
12 pumping plants. Currently, little excess capacity exists in the Federal
13 pumps at Jones, but some additional capacity is available in the SWP
14 pumps at Banks. The potential added benefit to CVP through joint
15 point of diversion operations during average and critical years would be
16 about 61,000 and 32,000 acre-feet, respectively. This measure is being
17 actively pursued by Reclamation and DWR and it is highly likely that
18 some form of the joint point of diversion will be implemented in the
19 future. This measure was deleted from further consideration in the
20 SLWRI because it would not effectively address the primary planning
21 objectives, and is likely to be implemented, in some form, independent
22 of the SLWRI.

- 23 • **Implement additional precipitation enhancement** – Precipitation
24 enhancement is a process by which clouds are stimulated to produce
25 more rainfall or snowfall than they would naturally. This process is
26 accomplished by seeding a cloud with a substance such as silver iodide,
27 an ice-like structure, that encourages water to form ice particles heavy
28 enough to fall out as rain or snow. Precipitation enhancement has been
29 practiced continuously in California since the 1950s for water supply
30 and hydroelectric power purposes. It is estimated that about a 2 to 15
31 percent increase in annual precipitation or runoff can be achieved by
32 this process. Indications are that precipitation enhancement is highly
33 cost-effective in increased average annual rainfall. It has been
34 determined that this technology likely does not decrease downwind
35 precipitation. However, environmental concerns exist about weather
36 modification.

37 It is important to understand that precipitation enhancement is not a
38 short-term remedy for droughts because supply increases can only be
39 achieved during years when it would otherwise rain or snow naturally,
40 meaning in above-average precipitation years. Accordingly,
41 precipitation enhancement is not an alternative to new system storage,
42 which focuses on conserving water in wetter years for use in drier
43 years. In addition, this technology is being pursued under the without-
44 project condition. This measure was deleted from further consideration

1 in the SLWRI primarily because it would not address the planning
2 objectives and is not an alternative to new storage in Shasta Reservoir.

3 **Reduce Demand** Measures identified to reduce demand and thus increase
4 water supply reliability are described below.

- 5 • **Implement water use efficiency methods** – Water use efficiency
6 methods can help reduce current and future water shortages by
7 allowing a more effective use of existing supplies. As population and
8 resulting water demands continue to grow and available supplies
9 remain relatively static, effective use of supplies can reduce potential
10 critical impacts to urban and agricultural resources resulting from water
11 shortages.

12 Reclamation is an implementing agency for the CALFED Water Use
13 Efficiency program (CALFED 2000). The Water Use Efficiency
14 Program was developed to support efficient use of water supplies
15 developed by CALFED. The program is comprised of a combination
16 of technical assistance, grants and loans, and directed studies in
17 program areas including: agricultural water conservation, urban water
18 conservation, water recycling, and desalination. The program
19 coordinates with, builds on, and supplements the work of the
20 Agricultural Water Management Council and the California Urban
21 Water Conservation Council. Supporting information for the program is
22 contained in a *2006 Water Use Efficiency Comprehensive Evaluation*
23 for the CALFED Water Use Efficiency Element (CALFED 2006) and
24 the *California Water Plan 2009 Update* (DWR 2009).

25 The 2009 *California Water Plan Update* (DWR) also identified a host
26 of agricultural and urban water conservation measures. It is important
27 to note that water “saved” by conservation practices is often water that,
28 without conservation, would return to the hydrologic system and
29 become a supply for other users. Accordingly, conservation does not
30 simply mean reducing consumptive uses for crops in agricultural areas
31 or for dwelling units in urban areas. Truly effective conservation
32 applies when it consists of reducing irrecoverable water, or reducing
33 water use that otherwise would be lost to the hydrologic system. For
34 agricultural uses, examples of irrecoverable water would be (1) water
35 used to leach salts from the soil and subsequently lost to the system
36 through collection and evaporation (2) water lost to excessive
37 evaporation or transpiration, or (3) channel evaporation losses. For
38 urban uses, examples of genuine water conservation would be reducing
39 (1) residential landscape water lost to evaporation or transpiration; (2)
40 commercial, industrial, and institutional losses that are not recoverable;
41 and (3) water distribution system losses or leakage in areas where water
42 would not be recoverable.

1 The 2006 CALFED document indicated that the potential for
2 recovering currently irrecoverable agricultural losses in the Sacramento
3 and San Joaquin River Basins could be about 142,000 acre-feet on an
4 average annual basis - with resulting unit costs of about \$200 per acre-
5 foot. Larger recoveries of currently irrecoverable agricultural losses are
6 technically feasible; however, the costs to achieve these amounts
7 increase considerably. The report also identified various urban water
8 use efficiency programs with the potential of reducing average annual
9 urban water use up to about 1.1 MAF per year by 2030 through a series
10 of best management practices. These practices ranged from potentially
11 cost-efficient regional opportunities likely to be implemented in the
12 future to those requiring grant funding and cost-sharing before they
13 could be implemented. It is estimated that implementation costs (using
14 approaches somewhat similar to those being considered for the surface
15 water storage projects) would exceed about \$300 per acre-foot for these
16 reductions. Note that either recovery of irrecoverable agricultural
17 losses, or reductions in urban water use during drought years would be
18 considerably less than in average years. Accordingly, the unit cost for
19 achieving drought period reductions in water use would be
20 considerably greater than the average unit cost above.

21 Many actions planned under the CALFED Water Use Efficiency
22 program will be accomplished with or without implementation of other
23 projects to address water supply reliability. “Projection Level One”
24 includes continued implementation of best management practices for
25 urban and agricultural conservation equivalent to those observed during
26 the first 13 years of CALFED. The CALFED Common Assumptions
27 for Water Storage Projects estimated that Level One has a potential to
28 reduce future agricultural losses by about 49,000 acre-feet per year and
29 urban demands in the State by about 1.2 MAF per year. Additional
30 water conservation measures will likely play a major role in
31 California’s future water picture. The California Water Plan as well as
32 numerous State and Federal agencies endorse and actively engage in
33 water use efficiency actions. Water use efficiency will constitute a
34 significant element in helping to reduce demands to help offset future
35 shortages in water supplies. Accordingly, water use efficiency was
36 retained as a potential project element to be considered to the extent
37 possible in the implementation of a potential plan of action for the
38 SLWRI.

- 39 • **Retire agricultural lands** – Recent studies indicate that by retiring
40 about 150,000 acres from irrigated croplands in the San Joaquin Valley,
41 the demand for irrigation water could be reduced by about 260,000
42 acre-feet per year under average conditions. It is estimated that in dry
43 and critical years, potential savings through this measure could be
44 much reduced from the average annual value because it is during these
45 water-short years that marginal lands are normally allowed to go

1 fallow. Some estimates have placed the drought period demand
2 reduction at between 100,000 and 150,000 acre-feet per year. The
3 estimated construction cost to acquire land rights to permanently retire
4 lands from irrigated agriculture uses amounts to about \$500 million,
5 resulting in an equivalent dry-period unit water cost of about \$300 per
6 acre-foot. Although the equivalent unit cost of water for this measure
7 may be found competitive with other potential water sources, this
8 measure was deleted from further consideration. This is primarily
9 because of the likely limited ability of this measure to actually address
10 helping meet future water demands in the Central Valley. First, as
11 mentioned, marginal lands are already often allowed to fallow during
12 drought periods. Further, there would be a high degree of uncertainty
13 regarding the institutional ability to acquire sufficient additional land
14 rights necessary to preclude future irrigated agriculture on lands
15 identified for inclusion in a project/program. This especially would be
16 the case if efforts were made to acquire and retire higher productivity
17 lands that may actually lead to water savings during drought periods.
18 Further, there is believed to be a limited ability to successfully apply
19 this measure to lands in the Central Valley at costs similar to those
20 above for less productive lands. Lastly, this measure would not address
21 other planning objectives of the SLWRI.

22 **Improve Water Transfers and Purchases** In order to improve water transfers
23 and purchases, the following measure was identified.

- 24 • **Transfer water between users** – Water purchases and transfers do not
25 generate new water for the CVP. They simply consist of transferring
26 water between a seller willing to forgo a water use for a time and a
27 willing buyer within the Central Valley. The availability and price of a
28 supply for purchase and used for transfer depends on several factors
29 such as year type, other available supplies, storage capabilities, and
30 transmission capacity. Temporary and long-term (greater than 1 year,
31 as defined by DWR) transfers between water districts have increased
32 from about 80,000 acre-feet in 1985 to over 1.2 MAF in 2001. This
33 trend is expected to continue as the demand for available supplies
34 continues. Only about 20 percent of the transfers are based on
35 agreements greater than 1 year. Most depend on the water spot market.
36 Both Reclamation and DWR also have active water transfer programs
37 and a significant number of water transfers will continue to occur in the
38 future under without-project conditions as available supplies become
39 scarce. Further, the future of the Environmental Water Account
40 depends on the ability to acquire and transfer water through the Delta to
41 mitigate impacts of south Delta pumping curtailment to benefit at-risk
42 fish. Because of these and other projects and actions, and ongoing
43 infrastructure limitations on conveying water from north of the Delta
44 south, it is believed that as water supply demands continue to grow and
45 exceed developed supplies, especially during dry years, and as market

1 conditions change, the cost of water is expected to increase
2 considerably. It is likely that the most feasible and reliable water
3 transfers will be implemented under without-project conditions. Any
4 remaining opportunities for transfers likely would be small, include
5 high uncertainties, be difficult to implement, and be more costly. In
6 addition, water transfers are unlikely to contribute to improving water
7 quality (particularly during dry periods) or provide a less-costly
8 Environmental Water Account replacement supply (transfers are a
9 water acquisition tool already used by the Environmental Water
10 Account). Consequently, this measure was deleted from further
11 consideration primarily because it would not be a long-term reliable
12 substitute for new storage in Shasta Reservoir.

- 13 • **Expand Delta Export and Conveyance Facilities** – The two measures
14 in this category would divert surplus water when safe for fish, then
15 bank, store, transfer, and release the surplus water as needed to protect
16 fish and to compensate water users. This could be accomplished by
17 increasing the capacity of conveyance facilities of the CVP and SWP at
18 several locations, as follows:

- 19 – **Expand Banks Pumping Plant** – The current allowable pumping
20 capacity at the SWP Banks Pumping Plant is 6,680 cfs. Efforts are
21 underway by Reclamation and DWR to construct fish protection
22 features under the South Delta Improvements Program to allow
23 increasing the allowable pumping capacity to 8,500 cfs during
24 certain seasonal periods. The maximum installed pumping capacity
25 at Banks is about 10,300 cfs. This measure primarily includes
26 implementing additional physical features and operational
27 improvements aimed at benefiting the overall water quality of the
28 Delta to further increase the allowable pumping capacity at Banks
29 from 8,500 cfs to 10,300 cfs during certain seasonal periods, and
30 splitting the increased pumping capacity equally between the CVP
31 and SWP. This increased capacity would allow more water that
32 otherwise would flow to the Pacific Ocean to be conveyed south of
33 the Delta. It is estimated that the average annual increase in
34 supplies south of the Delta allocated to the CVP could amount to
35 over 100,000 acre-feet. The estimated unit cost for the increase in
36 water supply reliability would be highly efficient when compared
37 with other potential sources of new water supplies. However,
38 because this measure would not contribute to the SLWRI planning
39 objectives or identified plan formulation constraints, principles, and
40 criteria, it was not viewed as a potential alternative to new storage
41 in Shasta Reservoir. Accordingly, it was deleted from further
42 consideration in the SLWRI.

- 43 – **Construct Delta Mendota Canal/California Aqueduct**
44 **(DMC/CA) intertie** – The pumping capacity of the CVP Jones

1 Pumping Plant into the DMC in the south Delta is 4,600 cfs.
2 However, because of land subsidence in the southern reaches of the
3 DMC, the effective capacity is limited to 4,200 cfs. Studies have
4 considered modifying the subsided reach of canal and constructing
5 a new canal parallel to the existing DMC. However, it appears that
6 a more cost-effective measure would be to connect the DMC to the
7 California Aqueduct. In some locations, the two canals are about
8 400 feet apart horizontally and 50 feet apart vertically. A potential
9 intertie would consist of constructing pumps and a 400 cfs capacity
10 conveyance canal between the two facilities several miles south of
11 the Jones Pumping Plant. It is estimated that this measure would
12 result in an average annual increase in supplies south of the Delta of
13 about 55,000 acre-feet. It is believed that the unit cost for the
14 increase in water supply reliability for this measure would be
15 comparable to other potential sources of new water supplies.
16 However, because this measure would not contribute to the
17 planning objectives of the SLWRI or identified plan formulation
18 constraints, principles, and criteria, it was not viewed as a potential
19 alternative to new storage in Shasta Reservoir. Accordingly, it was
20 deleted from further consideration in the SLWRI.

21 **Improve Source Water Treatment** The following two measures were
22 identified to improve source water treatment.

23 • **Implement treatment/supply of agricultural drainage water** – This
24 measure consists of collecting agricultural drainage from farms along
25 the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers and treating the drainage water
26 for reuse. Major elements of this measure likely include an agricultural
27 drainage collection system, pretreatment of drainage water, desalination
28 facilities, ancillary facilities associated with desalination and brine
29 disposal, and conveyance of treated water to end users. In addition,
30 removing total organic carbon and pesticides plus supplementary
31 disinfection may also be required before municipal agencies would
32 consider using the treated agricultural runoff as a potable supply. While
33 this measure may have potential to provide some water supply
34 reliability to urban users, it is far too costly for agricultural users. It
35 would be costly to initially implement and operate, problems would
36 exist relating to brine disposal, and it would likely be unacceptable to
37 stakeholders and the public. Accordingly, this measure was deleted
38 from further consideration.

39 • **Construct desalination facility** – This measure consists of
40 constructing seawater or brackish surface or groundwater desalination
41 plants to supplement existing water supplies and help offset future
42 demands. There are 23 desalination facilities with a total capacity of
43 about 80,000 acre-feet per year currently operating in California to
44 provide water for municipal purposes. It is estimated that by 2030, a

1 total of 49 desalination facilities with a cumulative capacity of nearly
2 600,000 acre-feet per year will be in operation in California. Primary
3 elements of any of the facilities include a water intake, pretreatment,
4 desalination, brine disposal, and ancillary facilities for the desalination
5 treatment plant. In addition, a conveyance system is needed to transport
6 the desalinated water to the customer or to the water agency
7 distribution systems. Although technological advances have
8 substantially decreased treatment costs, desalination remains costly
9 compared with most other water sources. Even with continual
10 improvement in membrane technology, energy costs can account for as
11 much as one-half the total cost of desalination.

12 Desalination is most efficient when used as a base supply because the
13 plants can be better and more cost-effectively maintained if
14 continuously operated, rather than if they are only operated during
15 drought periods. Alternately, if desalination were operated as a base
16 supply in all years, reserving contract water for use during drought
17 periods, less expensive average and wet-year contract water would be
18 forgone in most years. Consequently, desalination by itself would be a
19 highly inefficient option for agencies that rely on multiple water
20 sources or only intend to use desalination as a drought or emergency
21 supply.

22 Depending greatly on the quality of the source water and the cost of
23 power, desalination today can range from about \$700 to several
24 thousand dollars per acre-foot. As mentioned, desalination is energy
25 intensive and, with rising power costs, it is expected to continue to be
26 relatively expensive. Even if the unit cost for a base supply plant were
27 measurably reduced, desalination by itself would likely not be superior
28 to other potential water sources to address the primary planning
29 objective of agricultural water supply reliability in the SLWRI.
30 Accordingly, this measure was deleted from further consideration
31 primarily because it would not be an alternative to new storage in
32 Shasta Reservoir and if it were, its unit costs would be far greater than
33 new supplies from Shasta or other sources.

34 ***Measures Retained for Further Consideration***

35 Four of the above management measures to increase water supply reliability
36 were retained for further consideration and possible inclusion in concept plans.
37 Of these four, three were carried forward for inclusion in comprehensive plans.
38 Their major components and accomplishments are described below.

- 39 • **Increase conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir by raising**
40 **Shasta Dam** – This measure consists of structural raises of Shasta Dam
41 ranging from about 6.5 feet to approximately 200 feet. Chapter 3
42 includes descriptions of features, accomplishments, major impacts, and

1 costs for various dam raises within this range. Also included in the
2 chapter is a comparison of various dam raise options.

- 3 • **Increase effective conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir**
4 **by increasing efficiency of reservoir operation for water supply**
5 **reliability** – This measure consists of modifying the operation of
6 Shasta Dam to improve water supply reliability. It can also assist in
7 improving flood control. Potential methods to improve water supply
8 reliability include modifying rainflood parameters – those which
9 address space for flows from winter rainfall – in the operation rules for
10 Shasta Reservoir and modifying the Shasta Dam release schedule. The
11 goal of the operation changes would be to minimize the required
12 evacuation of the reservoir during the period from about late November
13 through March, and to possibly allow the reservoir to be filled more
14 rapidly in the spring. As mentioned, a primary criterion would be to
15 prevent adversely affecting existing flood protection provided by
16 Shasta Dam and possibly improve it. These possible reoperation
17 opportunities are described in the reference report *Assessment of*
18 *Potential of Shasta Dam Reoperation for Flood Control and Water*
19 *Supply Improvement* (Reclamation 2004b).

20 Although this measure was retained for inclusion in concept plans, its
21 specific features and their influence on water supply reliability and
22 flood damage reduction would not be developed until detailed
23 operations modeling could be accomplished in further investigations as
24 part of comprehensive alternative plan formulation in the SLWRI.

- 25 • **Develop conservation groundwater storage near the Sacramento**
26 **River downstream from Shasta Dam** – This in-lieu conjunctive water
27 management measure primarily consists of using the incremental
28 increase in stored water in Shasta Reservoir to support a shift in the
29 timing of water diversion from the Sacramento River to help increase
30 water supply reliability to other CVP and possibly SWP water users in
31 dry periods. Under this measure, for agricultural interests willing to
32 participate in an in lieu program, during average and wetter years, more
33 surface water from an increased storage space in Shasta Reservoir
34 would be diverted from the Sacramento River and used in-lieu of
35 groundwater pumping. Accordingly, during drought years, less surface
36 water would be delivered to agricultural users, who would depend more
37 on groundwater supplies, allowing more of the normally diverted
38 surface water to be delivered to other users. The in lieu conjunctive
39 water management program would need to include incentives to
40 agricultural users to warrant their participation.

41 Although this plan was initially retained due to significant water supply
42 benefits, it was eliminated from further development during the
43 comprehensive plan phase. Subsequent operations modeling indicated

1 tradeoffs between conjunctive use water supply benefits and critical
2 gains in fisheries accomplishments. The resulting reduction in benefits
3 to fisheries operations in dry and critical years was deemed
4 unacceptable in terms of meeting primary project objectives.

- 5 • **Implement water use efficiency methods** – Water use efficiency
6 methods can help reduce current and future water shortages by
7 allowing a more effective use of existing supplies. As population and
8 resulting water demands continue to grow, and available supplies
9 remain relatively static, more effective use of supplies can reduce
10 potential critical impacts to urban and agricultural resources resulting
11 from water shortages. The California Water Plan Updates 2005 and
12 2009 (DWR 2005, DWR 2009) identified a host of urban and
13 agricultural water use efficiency measures. The 2009 plan indicates that
14 water use efficiency measures, although costly and difficult to
15 implement, will play a major role in California’s water future. Water
16 use efficiency will constitute a significant element in helping to reduce
17 demands to help offset future shortages in water supplies. Accordingly,
18 water use efficiency was retained for consideration as a potential
19 project element for any plan to be considered for the SLWRI.

20 **Measures to Address Secondary Planning Objectives**

21 Various management measures were identified to address the five secondary
22 planning objectives. For each secondary planning objective, measures were
23 identified and separated into categories. In the following sections, the rationale
24 is discussed for retaining or deleting each measure.

25 **Conserve, Restore, and Enhance Ecosystem Resources**

26 Identifying potential ecosystem restoration opportunities included water
27 management measures to address the secondary planning objective of
28 ecosystem restoration in the Shasta Lake vicinity and along the Sacramento
29 River downstream from Shasta Dam. Of the 19 management measures
30 identified to address the secondary planning objective of ecosystem restoration,
31 three were retained for possible inclusion in concept plans (see Table 2-4).

32 It should be mentioned that some of the measures deleted from further
33 consideration in this appendix for the purpose of ecosystem restoration might be
34 determined in further studies to be suitable for helping mitigate potential
35 adverse impacts of comprehensive alternative plans. Further, some measures or
36 expansions of measures retained for further consideration also could be
37 considered for mitigating adverse environmental and related impacts.

38 ***Measures Considered***

39 Following is a brief discussion of the measures considered, which are separated
40 into three categories: (1) improving cold-water and warm-water fisheries, (2)

1 restoring and conserving riparian and wetland habitat, and (3) improving other
2 fish and wildlife habitat. Rationale is included in this section for retaining or
3 deleting measures. Also included are additional descriptions of the three
4 measures retained for further consideration.

5

Table 2-4. Management Measures Addressing the Secondary Planning Objective of Conserving, Restoring, and Enhancing Ecosystem Resources

| Management Measure | Potential to Address Planning Objective | Status/Rationale |
|--|---|--|
| Enhance Cold-Water and Warm-Water Fishery Habitat | | |
| Construct shoreline fish habitat around Shasta Lake | Moderate to High – Contributes to ecosystem restoration goals within watershed. | Retained – Would complement measures to increase storage in Shasta Lake. |
| Construct instream fish habitat on tributaries to Shasta Lake | Moderate to High – Contributes to ecosystem restoration goals within watershed. | Retained – Would complement measures to increase storage in Shasta Lake. High local interest. |
| Increase instream flows on the lower McCloud River | Moderate – Potential to benefit aquatic resources on lower McCloud River. | Deleted – Considerable impacts to hydropower. |
| Reduce acid mine drainage entering Shasta Lake | Moderate – Considerable benefit under certain hydrologic conditions. | Deleted – Considerable implementation, O&M, and liability issues. |
| Reduce motorcraft access to upper reservoir arms | Moderate – Potential to benefit fisheries in Shasta Lake. | Deleted – Motorcraft management is under the purview of USFS. |
| Increase instream flows on the Pit River | Moderate – Potential to benefit aquatic resources in upper Pit River. | Deleted – Considerable impacts to hydropower. |
| Restore and Conserve Riparian and Wetland Habitat | | |
| Restore riparian and floodplain habitat along the Sacramento River | High – Directly contributes to ecosystem restoration along mainstem Sacramento River. | Retained – Would be compatible with other primary study objectives. Consistent with other restoration programs and projects in the primary study area. |
| Restore wetlands along the Fall River and Hat Creek | Low – Very low potential to contribute to ecosystem restoration in the Shasta Lake area. | Deleted – Considerably removed from primary study area. Independent action with low potential to contribute to other primary or secondary planning objectives. |
| Conserve upper Pit River riparian areas | Low – Very low potential to contribute to planning objective. | Deleted – Significantly removed from primary study area. Independent action with low potential to contribute to other primary or secondary planning objectives. |
| Restore riparian and floodplain habitat along lower Clear Creek | Moderate – Indirectly supports planning objective. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to tributaries. Independent action and would not directly contribute to improved ecological conditions along mainstem Sacramento River. |
| Promote Great Valley cottonwood regeneration on Sacramento River | Moderate – Potential to contribute to planning objective. | Deleted – High uncertainty for Federal participation and low potential to contribute to primary and other secondary planning objectives. |
| Conserve riparian corridor along Cow Creek | Moderate – Indirectly supports planning objective. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to tributaries. Independent action and would not directly contribute to improved ecological conditions along mainstem Sacramento River. |
| Remove and control nonnative vegetation in the Cow Creek and Cottonwood Creek watersheds | Moderate – Indirectly supports planning objective. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to tributaries. Independent action and would not contribute to primary or secondary planning objective conditions along mainstem Sacramento River. |
| Improve Other Fish and Wildlife Habitat | | |
| Create a parkway along the Sacramento River | Moderate – Can contribute to ecosystem restoration in the study area. | Deleted – Primarily focuses on land acquisition and conversion to public uses. As a project element, it would be a non-Federal responsibility with little direct Federal interest. Elements are a likely without-project condition. |
| Enhance forest management practices to conserve bald eagle nesting habitat | Low to Moderate – Can contribute to ecosystem restoration in study area. | Deleted – Likely a without-project condition; is an element of forest recovery plans by USFS. |
| Remove and control nonnative plants around Shasta Lake | Low to Moderate – Can contribute to ecosystem restoration in study area. | Deleted – Likely a without-project condition; is an element of forest recovery plans by USFS. |
| Control erosion and restore affected habitat in the Shasta Lake area | Low to Moderate – Can contribute to ecosystem restoration in study area. | Deleted – Likely a without-project condition; is an element of forest recovery plans by USFS. |
| Develop geographic information system for Shasta to Red Bluff reach | Low to Moderate – Can contribute to ecosystem restoration in study area. | Deleted – Would not directly contribute to other primary or secondary planning objectives. GIS mapping likely a without-project condition as part of other ongoing studies and projects. |
| Implement erosion control in tributary watersheds | Moderate – Indirectly supports planning objective. | Deleted – Considerable benefit to tributaries. Independent action and would not directly contribute to improved ecological conditions near Shasta Lake or along mainstem Sacramento River. |

Key:
GIS = geographic information system
O&M = operations and maintenance
USFS = U.S. Forest Service

This page left blank intentionally.

1 **Improve Cold-Water and Warm-Water Fishery Habitat** The following
2 measures were identified to improve cold-water and warm-water fishery habitat.

- 3 • **Construct shoreline fish habitat around Shasta Lake** – Many of the
4 shallow, warm-water areas along the shoreline of Shasta Lake are
5 capable of providing preferred habitat for juvenile fish and other adult
6 resident fish species. The shorelines of most natural lakes and water
7 bodies are lined with trees, rocks, debris, and other structures that
8 provide cover. However, the shoreline of Shasta Lake is comparatively
9 barren, which increases juvenile mortality. The lack of shoreline cover
10 and suitable shallow-water fish habitat is due to several factors,
11 including steep topography, soils, wave action, and seasonal water
12 fluctuations in the lake. These factors cause erosion and prevent
13 vegetation from becoming established within the lake drawdown area.
14 This measure consists of improving shallow, warm-water habitat
15 around the shoreline of Shasta Lake by planting resistant vegetation
16 and placing large woody debris, boulders, and other aquatic “cover”
17 structures within the drawdown area of the lake. This measure would
18 not be universally applicable. It would be considered only at locations
19 where the physical parameters (soils, slopes, existing vegetation, etc.)
20 would allow. This measure would support the secondary planning
21 objective of conserving and restoring ecosystem resources in the Shasta
22 Lake area. It would not conflict with any other ecosystem restoration
23 measures that were preliminarily retained, nor would it conflict with
24 other known programs or projects in the vicinity of Shasta Lake. This
25 measure was retained for potential inclusion in concept plans primarily
26 because it would be compatible with potential measures to raise Shasta
27 Dam; habitat treatments could be extended, as needed, into the
28 additional drawdown area.

- 29 • **Construct instream fish habitat on tributaries to Shasta Lake** –
30 Tributary streams are an important environmental resource in the
31 primary study area, supporting a variety of native and nonnative fish
32 and other aquatic organisms. However, the quality and quantity of
33 instream aquatic habitat has decreased over the last century because of
34 the construction of dams, modification of stream hydrology, and other
35 human influences. This measure consists of improving and restoring
36 instream aquatic habitat on the lower reaches of key tributaries to
37 Shasta Lake using various structural techniques to enhance fish passage
38 and improve overall aquatic connectivity. It would not conflict with
39 other known programs or projects in the vicinity of Shasta Lake. This
40 restoration measure was retained for further consideration primarily
41 because it would be compatible with potential measures to raise Shasta
42 Dam and with other potential ecosystem restoration measures.

- 43 • **Increase instream flows on the lower McCloud River** – This
44 measure consists of increasing releases from McCloud Dam for the

1 purpose of increasing flows on the lower McCloud River. This measure
2 would benefit fisheries on the lower McCloud River. Currently,
3 McCloud Dam operations are part of the Pit-McCloud Hydroelectric
4 Project. Water is exported from the McCloud River watershed through
5 a tunnel to Iron Canyon Reservoir and from there to a powerhouse on
6 the Pit River. Dam operations maintain minimum flows between 40
7 and 50 cfs on the lower McCloud River. This measure was deleted
8 from further consideration for addressing the objective of ecosystem
9 restoration primarily because of the considerable adverse impact on
10 hydropower generation. However, it is a good example of a measure
11 that may be reconsidered in the future to help mitigate adverse impacts.

12 • **Reduce acid mine drainage entering Shasta Lake** – This measure
13 consists of remediating the residual adverse environmental impacts of
14 abandoned former mining operations on aquatic conditions in Shasta
15 Lake and its tributaries. This measure was deleted from further
16 consideration because of numerous implementation issues, including
17 high operations and maintenance (O&M) requirements necessary for
18 success and liability issues. This measure may be reconsidered in the
19 future to help mitigate adverse impacts.

20 • **Reduce motorcraft access to upper reservoir arms** – This measure
21 consists of imposing additional boating and personal watercraft
22 restrictions on portions of Shasta Lake. This measure was eliminated
23 from further consideration primarily because motorcraft activity on
24 Shasta Lake is already regulated by Federal and State boating laws,
25 Shasta County, and USFS; additional regulations (if applicable) would
26 be more appropriate as part of these existing programs.

27 • **Increase instream flows on the Pit River** – This measure consists of
28 increasing instream flows on the lower Pit River to benefit native fish
29 and aquatic habitat through performing power buy-outs, altering power
30 generation operations, or removing selected water diversions or
31 diversion facilities. This measure was eliminated from further
32 consideration primarily because of the considerable adverse impact on
33 hydropower generation from these existing facilities.

34 **Restore and Conserve Riparian and Wetland Habitat** Seven measures were
35 identified to restore and conserve riparian and wetland habitat. Each measure is
36 described below.

37 • **Restore riparian and floodplain habitat along the Sacramento**
38 **River** – Riparian areas provide habitat for a diverse array of plant and
39 animal communities along the Sacramento River, including numerous
40 threatened or endangered species. Riparian areas also provide shade
41 and woody debris that improve the complexity of aquatic habitat and its
42 suitability for spawning and rearing. Lower floodplain areas, river

1 terraces, and gravel bars play an important role in the health and
2 succession of riparian habitat. These areas are seasonally flooded on a
3 frequent basis, interacting with dynamic river processes such as erosion
4 and deposition. Riparian and floodplain terrace habitat along the
5 Sacramento is limited between Keswick Dam and the RBPP. This is
6 partially due to the natural topography and hydrology of the region; the
7 Sacramento River is naturally more entrenched in this reach, and
8 floodplains are narrow compared with the broad alluvial floodplains
9 found lower in the Sacramento River system. This measure consists of
10 restoring riparian and floodplain habitat at specific locations along the
11 Sacramento River to promote the health and vitality of the river
12 ecosystem. It would not conflict with other ecosystem restoration
13 measures that were preliminarily retained or with other known
14 programs or projects on the upper Sacramento River. The restoration
15 would support the goals of the Sacramento River Conservation Area
16 Forum, CALFED, and other programs associated with riparian
17 restoration along the Sacramento River. This measure was retained for
18 further consideration primarily because it would have a high likelihood
19 of success in accomplishing effective restoration and would indirectly
20 benefit aquatic habitat conditions for anadromous fish.

- 21 • **Restore wetlands along the Fall River and Hat Creek** – This
22 measure consists of restoring marshlands and wetlands along the Fall
23 River and Hat Creek in the Pit River watershed. This measure was
24 deleted from further consideration primarily because it is an
25 independent action and would not directly contribute to accomplishing
26 the primary or other secondary planning objectives.
- 27 • **Conserve upper Pit River riparian areas** – This measure primarily
28 consists of conserving high-value existing stands of riparian vegetation
29 along the upper Pit River through acquiring environmental easements,
30 and installing fencing and natural vegetation barriers around riparian
31 corridors affected by grazing animals. This measure was deleted from
32 further consideration primarily because it is an independent action and
33 would not directly contribute to accomplishing the primary or other
34 secondary planning objectives.
- 35 • **Restore riparian and floodplain habitat along lower Clear Creek** –
36 This measure includes restoring floodplain and riparian habitat along
37 lower Clear Creek. This measure was deleted from further
38 consideration primarily because it would not directly contribute to
39 accomplishing the primary or other secondary planning objectives.
- 40 • **Promote Great Valley cottonwood regeneration on the Sacramento**
41 **River** – This measure consists of actively supporting the Great Valley
42 cottonwood regeneration concept along the Sacramento River. This
43 includes working to replace lost floodplain sediment, recontouring

1 floodplains that have disconnected from the river, and revegetating
2 floodplain areas that could support Great Valley cottonwoods. This
3 measure was deleted from further consideration primarily because (1)
4 there would be major complexities associated with continuing Federal
5 participation in an ongoing broad-scope program in the Sacramento
6 Valley, and (2) it would not directly contribute to accomplishing the
7 primary or other secondary planning objectives.

- 8 • **Conserve riparian corridor along Cow Creek** – This measure
9 consists of protecting and conserving the riparian corridor along Cow
10 Creek. It primarily includes acquiring environmental easements,
11 installing livestock fencing, developing natural vegetation barriers, and
12 replanting streamside grasses, shrubs, and trees. This measure would
13 not directly contribute to improved ecological conditions along the
14 upper Sacramento River. This measure was deleted from further
15 consideration primarily because it would not directly contribute to
16 accomplishing the primary or other secondary planning objectives.

- 17 • **Remove and control nonnative vegetation in the Cow Creek and
18 Cottonwood Creek watersheds** – This measure consists of abating
19 exotic vegetation in the Cow Creek and Cottonwood Creek watersheds
20 through removing invasive species from riparian corridors. Periodic
21 monitoring and reapplication of control measures would be required to
22 maintain long-term benefits and effectiveness. In addition, this
23 measure would likely have a limited ability to provide consistent and
24 reliable benefits, compared with the other measures proposed. This
25 measure was deleted from further consideration primarily because it
26 would not directly contribute to accomplishing the primary or other
27 secondary planning objectives.

28 **Improve Other Fish and Wildlife Habitat** The following measures were
29 identified to improve other fish and wildlife habitat.

- 30 • **Create a parkway along the Sacramento River** – Interest is growing
31 in conserving public access to area rivers, lakes, streams, and other
32 natural resources, and protecting their recreational, environmental, and
33 aesthetic values. For instance, local groups have successfully
34 established public parks and other ecosystem-focused conservation
35 areas around Redding. This measure consists of establishing a natural,
36 riverfront parkway along the Sacramento River near the Redding and
37 Anderson urban areas to conserve riparian and floodplain habitat and
38 promote habitat continuity along the river corridor. While this
39 restoration would support the goals of the Sacramento River
40 Conservation Area Forum, CALFED, and other programs, it is
41 primarily focused on acquisition of lands and land rights, and
42 converting existing uses to those supporting public uses. Because of the
43 high focus on land acquisition, there would be little known Federal

1 interest and small potential to contribute to the primary or other
2 secondary planning objectives of the SLWRI. In addition, elements of
3 this measure are being implemented as part of other programs, and this
4 measure is likely a without-project condition. Accordingly, this
5 measure was deleted from further consideration in the SLWRI.

- 6 • **Enhance forest management practices to conserve bald eagle**
7 **nesting habitat** – This measure consists of enhancing bald eagle
8 nesting habitat at various locations around Shasta Lake through forest
9 management practices, including thinning, applying insecticides to
10 reduce mortality from bark beetles and other pests, control stocking in
11 conifer stands to encourage growth of large trees, and managing
12 underbrush to protect important stands from wildfires. This measure
13 was deleted from further consideration primarily because it is a likely
14 without-project condition.
- 15 • **Remove and control nonnative plants around Shasta Lake** – This
16 measure consists of removing and controlling nonnative species at
17 various locations around Shasta Lake primarily through herbicides,
18 physical removal, or controlled burning. This measure was deleted
19 from further consideration primarily because it is a likely without-
20 project condition. Also, it is similar to programs being implemented in
21 the study area by USFS.
- 22 • **Control erosion and restore affected habitat in the Shasta Lake**
23 **area** – This measure consists of restoring highly erodible lands in the
24 Sacramento River and Pit River watershed near Shasta Lake that have
25 been impacted by timber harvest, historic smelter blight, and other
26 human activities. This measure was deleted from further consideration
27 primarily because it is a likely without-project condition. Also, it is
28 similar to programs being implemented in the study area by USFS.
- 29 • **Develop geographic information system for Shasta to Red Bluff**
30 **reach** – This measure consists of developing a geographic information
31 system (GIS) for the Sacramento River and tributaries between Shasta
32 Dam and the RBPP. This measure was deleted from further
33 consideration primarily because (1) it would not directly contribute to
34 accomplishing the primary planning objectives and (2) GIS-based
35 mapping is being developed by numerous regional studies and local
36 entities.
- 37 • **Implement erosion control in tributary watersheds** – This measure
38 consists of implementing local erosion control projects in watersheds
39 tributary to the Sacramento River to prevent loss of key floodplain and
40 riparian habitat, and to conserve the quality of aquatic habitat impaired
41 by excessive sediment input. This measure was deleted from further
42 consideration as a potential restoration element primarily because it

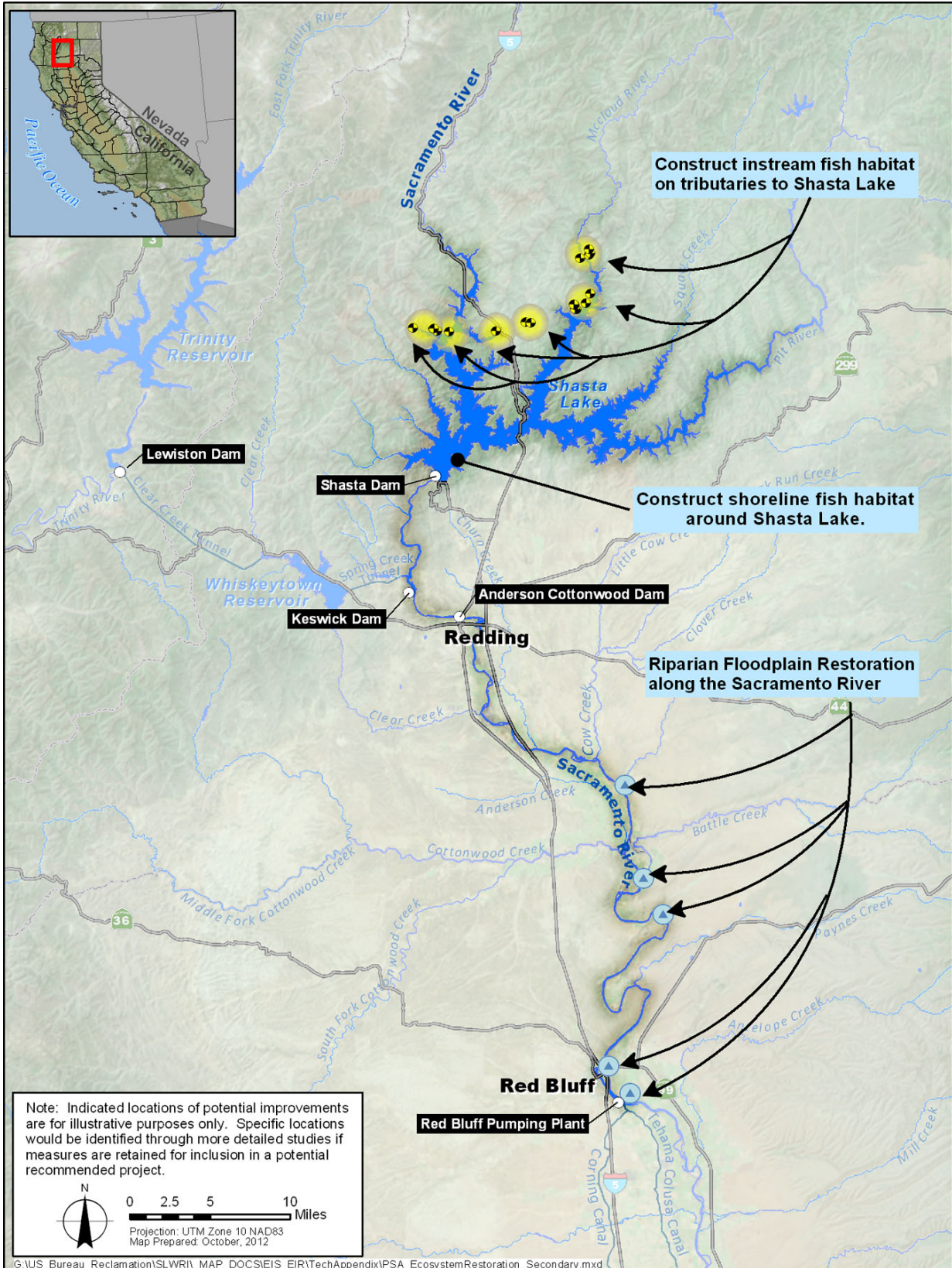
1 would not contribute to improved ecological conditions near Shasta
2 Lake or along the upper Sacramento River and would not directly
3 contribute to accomplishing the primary or other secondary planning
4 objectives.

5 ***Measures Retained for Further Consideration***

6 Each of the three management measures retained to address the secondary
7 objective of ecosystem restoration in the Shasta Lake vicinity and along the
8 Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam were considered in greater
9 detail to determine how they might become components of concept plans. The
10 locations of the retained measures are shown in Figure 2-6 and described below
11 in terms of their major components, and accomplishments.

- 12
- 13 • **Construct shoreline fish habitat around Shasta Lake** – The
14 shorelines of most natural lakes and water bodies are lined with trees,
15 rocks, debris, and other structures that provide aquatic cover. But the
16 shoreline of Shasta Lake and other reservoirs is comparatively barren,
17 increasing juvenile fish mortality. The lack of shoreline cover and
18 suitable shallow water fish habitat is due to several factors, including
19 the steep topography, soils, wave action, and seasonal water
20 fluctuations in the reservoir. These factors cause erosion and prevent
21 vegetation from becoming established within the reservoir drawdown
22 area. In addition, large woody debris entering the lake from its
23 tributaries is removed annually due to boating concerns. Shallow,
24 warm-water areas along the shoreline of Shasta Lake provide preferred
25 habitat for juvenile fish and other adult resident fish species. This
26 measure would improve shallow, warm-water fish habitat at specific
27 locations around the shoreline of Shasta Lake using resilient vegetation
28 and aquatic “cover” structures within the upper drawdown area of the
lake.

29 This measure would involve (1) installing artificial fish cover,
30 including complex woody structures, (2) planting water-tolerant and/or
31 erosion-resistant vegetation at prescribed locations within the reservoir
32 drawdown area, and (3) performing selective reservoir rim clearing of
33 specific trees and vegetation. Applications would be chosen, as
34 appropriate, for site-specific shoreline conditions, taking into
35 consideration bank slope, rate of erosion, proximity to tributaries, soils,
36 and the presence of existing cover or vegetation. It is estimated that
37 about 20 structures and approximately 400 selective plantings would be
38 required for each acre of shoreline restored. The estimated life of the
39 artificial cover structures could depend on the type of structure.



1
2 **Figure 2-6. Measures Retained to Address Secondary Planning Objective – Ecosystem**
3 **Restoration**

1 It is estimated that locations near the mouths of tributaries would be
2 targeted for restoration because their lower reaches provide favorable
3 spawning conditions, and juvenile fish leaving the tributaries would
4 benefit from improved adjacent shoreline habitat. Further, fishermen
5 and other recreational users favor the mouths of tributaries. Shoreline
6 areas with gradual slopes provide a wider, shallow-habitat area and
7 would be more appropriate than steep banks that are prone to
8 accelerated erosion. In addition, the sites would need to be
9 undeveloped, provide reasonable construction access, and not be
10 subject to considerable recreational disturbances (i.e., adjacent to
11 marinas, picnic areas, campgrounds, or other areas that attract large
12 numbers of people). Several major and minor tributaries to Shasta Lake
13 appear to have a high potential for application of this measure. For the
14 purpose of this initial evaluation, it is estimated that sites at the mouths
15 of eight perennial tributaries would be selected with approximately 5
16 acres of shoreline suitable for restoration at each site. Other areas also
17 may have a high potential and would be evaluated in future studies.

18 Major accomplishments of this measure would be to (1) increase the
19 survival of juvenile fish by improving the quantity of available cover
20 and overall quality of shallow-water habitat, and (2) benefit land-based
21 species that inhabit the shoreline of Shasta Lake through establishing
22 resilient vegetation. This measure would support the secondary
23 planning objective of conserving and restoring ecosystem resources in
24 the Shasta Lake area. Increased shallow-water fish survival also would
25 enhance recreational sportfishing opportunities in the lake.

26 Potential measures to raise Shasta Dam would increase the reservoir
27 drawdown area that is subject to erosion and other factors that diminish
28 shoreline habitat. This measure would complement measures to raise
29 Shasta Dam because shoreline habitat treatments could be extended, as
30 needed, into the additional drawdown area. This measure does not
31 conflict with any other ecosystem restoration measures that were
32 preliminarily retained, nor does it conflict with other known programs
33 or projects in the vicinity of Shasta Lake.

34 The estimated certainty of the measure in achieving its intended
35 accomplishments is moderate, primarily because numerous factors
36 affect the sustainability of habitat within the drawdown area of the lake.
37 An adaptive management approach that would monitor and modify
38 restoration elements would improve the likelihood of success.

- 39 • **Construct instream fish habitat on tributaries to Shasta Lake** –
40 Tributary streams are an important environmental resource in the
41 primary study area, supporting a variety of native and nonnative fish
42 and other aquatic organisms. However, the quality and quantity of
43 instream aquatic habitat has decreased over the last century because of

1 construction of dams, modification of stream hydrology, and other
2 human influences. The quantity and quality of aquatic habitat in the
3 tributaries of Shasta Lake are influenced primarily by the presence of
4 road crossings and culverts, although in some cases other structures or
5 grade controls (e.g., transitional deltaic deposits) may constitute
6 barriers to aquatic connectivity, including fish passage. Barriers may
7 also be created by adverse water quality conditions, particularly high
8 water temperature or toxic materials. This measure would conserve
9 and/or restore instream aquatic habitat on the lower reaches of key
10 tributaries to Shasta Lake (see Figure 2-6).

11 Two categories of potential aquatic habitat enhancement in tributaries
12 are discussed below: (1) identifying and correcting barriers to fish
13 passage that are critical to various life stages for native fish species,
14 particularly at culverts and other human-made barriers, and (2)
15 identifying and implementing feasible aquatic habitat improvements
16 intended to conserve or restore degraded aquatic and riparian habitat in
17 tributaries to Shasta Lake.

18 Fish passage improvements include restoring and/or enhancing a
19 minimum of five perennial stream crossings to help enable upstream
20 and downstream passage for all life stages of native fish in Shasta Lake.
21 Barriers to fish passage in the watersheds above Shasta Lake are
22 primarily associated with culverts or other types of stream crossings.
23 Typical passage problems created by culverts and other road crossings
24 are as follows:

- 25 – Excessive drop at the downstream end of a crossing (perched
26 outlet)
- 27 – Water velocities within the crossing that are too fast for fish to
28 swim upstream
- 29 – Constriction of flow as it enters a crossing, causing excessive water
30 velocities and turbulence at the inlet
- 31 – Lack of sufficient water depth in a culvert for fish to swim
- 32 – Debris accumulation across an inlet or within a culvert

33 Aquatic habitat restoration includes efforts to reestablish or enhance
34 aquatic connectivity, and reestablish or conserve riparian vegetation
35 needed to provide shade, cover, and organic material. Additionally,
36 aquatic habitat restoration includes reducing sediment and other
37 pollutants associated with roads and other human-made disturbances
38 from discharging into streams flowing into Shasta Lake. These
39 opportunities are consistent with recommendations developed in

1 watershed assessments prepared by the Shasta-Trinity National Forest
2 for lands in close proximity to Shasta Lake. The watershed
3 assessments identify roads, specifically stream crossings, as
4 opportunities for enhancing aquatic connectivity and reducing the
5 impacts of road-related sediment on aquatic habitat. As with other
6 elements of the aquatic enhancement program, it is anticipated that
7 additional site evaluations would be conducted to prioritize
8 opportunities based on available funding.

9 The lower reaches of intermittent and perennial streams tributary to
10 Shasta Lake that support aquatic organisms native to the upper
11 Sacramento River would be targeted for aquatic restoration under this
12 measure because they provide year-round fish habitat. Although up to
13 nearly 20 miles of stream could be considered for this measure, initial
14 implementation would likely be restricted to larger tributaries, after
15 which the potential to expand to smaller tributaries could be assessed.
16 For this measure, it is estimated that instream aquatic restoration would
17 be performed along a total of 8 miles of stream, or about 2 miles along
18 the lower reaches of each of the four major tributaries to Shasta Lake. It
19 is estimated that many of the restoration activities would be conducted
20 on Federal lands.

21 Major accomplishment of this measure would be to improve the quality
22 and availability of aquatic habitat on tributary streams. This measure
23 would support the secondary planning objective of conserving and
24 restoring ecosystem resources in Shasta Lake. Both native and
25 nonnative fish would benefit, including some lake fish that spawn on
26 the lower reaches of the tributaries. It could also benefit steelhead, a
27 native species that must be planted in the lake annually, as some natural
28 reproduction occurs on the lower reaches of the tributaries to Shasta
29 Lake. Improving aquatic habitat also would enhance recreational
30 sportfishing opportunities in the area.

31 This restoration measure would complement potential efforts to restore
32 shoreline fish habitat in Shasta Lake because many juveniles that use
33 shoreline habitat hatch on the lower reaches of the tributaries. Thus,
34 improving and restoring aquatic habitat on the tributaries would
35 increase the number of juveniles entering Shasta Lake. This measure
36 would be compatible with potential measures to raise Shasta Dam and
37 does not conflict with any other ecosystem restoration measures that
38 were preliminarily retained. This measure does not conflict with other
39 known programs or projects in the vicinity of Shasta Lake.

40 The estimated certainty of this measure in achieving its intended
41 accomplishments is high. Most of the major tributaries to Shasta Lake
42 are highly regulated, reducing the potential for improvements to be
43 damaged or destroyed during extreme flow events. Similar activities

1 have been accomplished with success on other similar stream systems.
2 CDFW, the Cantara Trust, and the Coordinated Resource Management
3 Plan group have participated in similar restoration activities in Shasta
4 County. Restoration actions should be coordinated with local
5 restoration groups, tribes, landowners, and CDFW, as appropriate.

- 6 • **Restore riparian and floodplain habitat along the Sacramento**
7 **River** – Riparian areas provide habitat for a diverse array of plant and
8 animal communities along the Sacramento River, including numerous
9 threatened or endangered species. Riparian areas also provide shade
10 and woody debris that improve the complexity of aquatic habitat and its
11 suitability for spawning and rearing. Lower floodplain areas, river
12 terraces, and gravel bars play an important role in the health and
13 succession of riparian habitat. These areas are seasonally flooded on a
14 frequent basis, interacting with dynamic river processes such as erosion
15 and deposition. Riparian and floodplain terrace habitat along the
16 Sacramento River is limited between Keswick Dam and the RBPP.
17 This measure consists of restoring riparian and floodplain habitat at
18 specific locations along the Sacramento River to promote the health
19 and vitality of the river ecosystem (see Figure 2-6).

20 This measure would involve acquiring and revegetating floodplain
21 terraces and adjacent riparian areas with native plants. Suitable
22 locations for restoration would be in areas with a 20 percent to 50
23 percent chance of flooding in any year (commonly referred to as 2-year
24 to 5-year floodplains). Locations near the confluences of perennial
25 creeks and streams tributary to the Sacramento River would have
26 potential to provide maximum benefits. Continuity is also important to
27 the health and vitality of riparian areas; small, isolated patches of
28 riparian habitat tend to be less productive than larger, continuous
29 stretches of habitat. It is estimated that a limited amount of land
30 contouring and imported fill material would be required at several
31 locations where the historic floodplain has been disconnected from the
32 river or disturbed by human activity.

33 For the purpose of this preliminary evaluation, it is estimated that a
34 total of 500 acres would be restored at one or more sites. Planting mix,
35 composition, and density would be determined by a more detailed site
36 analysis, but could include native cottonwood, willow, box elder, valley
37 oak, western sycamore, elderberry, and a variety of understory brush
38 species. Temporary irrigation would be provided on an as-needed basis.
39 The revegetated areas are expected to develop into self-sustaining
40 riparian habitats within 1 to 4 years of initial planting, based on results
41 of previous riparian restoration projects along the Sacramento River.
42 Regraded floodplain areas are expected to change over time depending
43 on hydrologic conditions, but it is anticipated that no elements of this
44 measure would need to be replaced or reapplied during the 50-year

1 project life. The site would be fenced to reduce the potential for access
2 by livestock.

3 This measure would involve land acquisition, floodplain contouring
4 and other earthwork, and revegetation. There appears to be local
5 support for this type of restoration project along the Sacramento River.
6 The primary accomplishment of this measure would be to restore native
7 riparian habitat and associated floodplain lands. This measure would
8 support the secondary planning objective of conserving and restoring
9 ecosystem resources along the upper Sacramento River. Riparian
10 habitat contributes to species diversity, water quality, and the quality of
11 instream aquatic habitat, providing shade and a source of woody debris.
12 In this manner, this measure indirectly supports the primary planning
13 objective of increasing the survival of anadromous fish on the
14 Sacramento River. The estimated certainty of this measure achieving
15 the intended accomplishments is very high. Similar restoration projects
16 along the Sacramento River have provided favorable, sustainable
17 results.

18 This measure would combine favorably with potential measures to
19 modify Shasta Dam because operational changes could benefit the
20 natural riverine processes that drive sustainable riparian habitat
21 regeneration. This measure would not conflict with other ecosystem
22 restoration measures preliminarily retained, or other known programs
23 or projects on the upper Sacramento River. Restoration would support
24 the goals of the Sacramento River Conservation Area Forum,
25 CALFED, and other restoration programs.

26 **Reduce Flood Damage**

27 Of five management measures identified to help reduce flood damages and
28 contribute to public safety along the Sacramento River, two were initially
29 retained for further development and possible inclusion in concept plans (Table
30 2-5). Of those two initially retained measures, one was carried forward for
31 incorporation in comprehensive plans. Following is a brief description of the
32 measures and rationale for retaining or deleting measures.

33

Table 2-5. Management Measures Addressing the Secondary Planning Objectives of Reducing Flood Damage, Developing Additional Hydropower Generation, Maintaining and Increasing Recreation, and Maintaining or Improving Water Quality

| Management Measure | Potential to Address Planning Objective | Status/Rationale |
|---|--|--|
| Reduce Flood Damage | | |
| Update Shasta Dam and Reservoir flood management operations | Moderate to High – Directly contributes to planning objective. | Retained – Compatible with any potential modification of Shasta Dam and Reservoir. Potential to realize an increase in flood control with increasing size of Shasta Reservoir for primary planning objectives. Would not conflict with other secondary planning objectives or planning constraints/criteria. |
| Increase flood management storage space in Shasta Reservoir | Moderate – Considerable potential to further reduce peak flows on upper Sacramento River; however, low potential to reduce flood damages due to the relatively high level of protection from existing facilities. | Deleted – Would conflict with the primary planning objectives. Estimated low potential for economic justification (costs are expected to exceed benefits). For increased space via raising Shasta Dam, it is expected that dam raise construction costs would considerably exceed flood control benefits. For space increase through reoperation, expected costs to replace reduction in water reliability would also considerably exceed flood control benefits. |
| Implement nonstructural flood damage reduction measures | Moderate – Partially contributes to planning objective. | Deleted – Independent action and not directly related to accomplishing the primary or other secondary planning objectives. |
| Implement traditional flood damage reduction measures | Moderate – Partially contributes to planning objective. | Deleted – Independent action and not directly related to accomplishing the primary or other secondary planning objectives. |
| Route PMF from top of conservation pool | Moderate to High – Directly contributes to public safety issues at Shasta Dam. | Deleted – This measure already is consistent with existing reservoir conditions and operations, making further changes unnecessary. |
| Develop Additional Hydropower Generation | | |
| Modify existing/construct new generation facilities at Shasta Dam to take advantage of increased hydraulic head | Moderate to High – Directly contributes to planning objective. | Retained – Potential to realize an increase in hydropower output from Shasta with increasing size of Shasta Reservoir for primary planning objectives. Would not conflict with other secondary planning objectives or planning constraints/criteria. |
| Construct new hydropower generation facilities | Moderate – Directly contributes to planning objective. | Deleted – This measure would directly contribute to the secondary planning objective but it is an independent action and not directly related to accomplishing the primary planning objectives. Although potential to realize additional hydropower benefits with increased/replaced hydropower facilities, could be pursued regardless of primary planning objectives. |

Table 2-5. Management Measures Addressing the Secondary Planning Objectives of Reducing Flood Damage, Increasing Hydropower, Maintaining and Increasing Recreation, and Maintaining or Improving Water Quality (contd.)

| Management Measure | Potential to Address Planning Objective | Status/Rationale |
|---|---|--|
| Maintain and Increase Recreation Opportunities | | |
| Maintain and enhance recreation capacity, facilities, and opportunities | High – Would directly contribute to planning objective. | Retained – Considerable potential to be added to alternatives to directly benefit recreation. |
| Develop new NRA recreation plan | Low to Moderate – Although contribute to planning objective, likely scope would be much greater. | Deleted – Developing a new NRA recreation plan is a completely separate process and should be pursued under that process. Scope is far beyond recreation being added as an increment to a water resources plan with the identified primary planning objectives for SLWRI. |
| Reoperate reservoir for recreation | High – Would directly contribute to planning objective. | Retained – Considerable potential to be added to alternatives to directly benefit recreation. |
| Maintain or Improve Water Quality | | |
| Improve operational flexibility for Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta water quality by increasing storage in Shasta Reservoir. | Moderate – Would contribute to secondary planning objective | Retained – Potential to contribute to the secondary planning objective of maintaining or improving water quality conditions in the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam and the Delta. |

Key:

NRA = National Recreation Area

PMF = probable maximum flood

SLWRI = Shasta Lake Water Resources Investigation

- 1 • **Update Shasta Dam and Reservoir flood management operations –**
2 This measure consists of revising the established rules for operating
3 Shasta Dam and Reservoir for flood management. This measure would
4 include reassessing existing seasonal flood control storage space needs
5 at Shasta using updated information on regional hydrologic and
6 meteorological conditions and rainfall/runoff characteristics in the
7 drainage basin. Potential methods to improve flood control would
8 include improved long-range weather forecasting, implementing
9 additional forecast-based reservoir drawdown to provide additional
10 space for anticipated high-flow events, changing criteria regarding the
11 rate of outflows from Shasta Dam for flood control, and modifying
12 target peak flows at Bend Bridge. This measure was retained for
13 further consideration primarily because it would be compatible with
14 any potential modification of Shasta Dam and Reservoir. It would not
15 conflict with other secondary planning objectives, planning constraints,
16 or criteria. As with reoperation for water supply reliability, although the
17 concept of this measure is being retained for further development, its
18 specific features and their influence on water supply reliability and
19 flood damage reduction would not be developed until detailed
20 operational modeling can be accomplished in further investigations as
21 part of detailed alternative plan formulation in the SLWRI.

- 22 • **Increase flood management storage space in Shasta –** This measure
23 consists of increasing the flood control storage space in Shasta
24 Reservoir primarily through raising the dam or reducing water
25 conservation storage space. A variation would be to substitute water
26 conservation storage space in Shasta with storage in another reservoir,
27 such as the NODOS project, and use vacant seasonal space in Shasta
28 for increased flood control. However, it is estimated that potential flood
29 damage reduction benefits to be gained from either action would be far
30 less than the costs to create increased storage space, either in Shasta
31 Reservoir or other facilities. For increased space resulting from raising
32 Shasta Dam, it is estimated that the cost to raise the dam would
33 considerably exceed potential flood control benefits. For space increase
34 through reoperation, the expected costs to replace reduction in water
35 reliability would also considerably exceed flood control benefits. This
36 measure was deleted from further consideration primarily because it
37 would likely conflict with the primary planning objectives. In addition,
38 it would not be economically feasible (costs are expected to exceed
39 benefits).

- 40 • **Implement nonstructural flood damage reduction measures –**
41 Typical nonstructural (or nontraditional) flood damage reduction
42 measures can include (1) flood-proofing (temporary or permanently
43 closing structures, raising existing structures, and constructing small
44 walls or levees around structures), (2) floodplain evacuation (moving
45 structures and their contents to safer sites), (3) development of

1 restrictions (restricting future building in flood-prone areas), and (4)
2 flood warning (flood forecasting, warning, evacuation, and post-flood
3 reoccupation and recovery). This measure was deleted from further
4 consideration primarily because it is an independent action and would
5 not be directly related to accomplishing the primary or other secondary
6 planning objectives. Also, programs are already in place through
7 Federal and State agencies to address flood hazard mitigation.

- 8 • **Implement traditional flood damage reduction measures** – Various
9 structural methods to reduce flood damages include constructing levees
10 or modifying the flood-carrying capacity of a river system. This
11 measure was deleted from further consideration primarily because it is
12 an independent action and would not be directly related to
13 accomplishing the primary or other secondary planning objectives.
14 Also, programs are already in place through Federal and State agencies
15 to address flood hazard mitigation.

- 16 • **Route Probable Maximum Flood from top of conservation pool** –
17 Shasta Dam can safely pass the computed Probable Maximum Flood
18 (PMF). However, routing the PMF from the top of the conservation
19 pool (4.5 MAF) would provide an additional margin of public safety in
20 the event of an extremely rare flood event approaching or equaling the
21 PMF. This measure was initially retained for development in concept
22 plans, then deleted from further consideration during the
23 comprehensive plan phase. Subsequent evaluation showed that existing
24 reservoir operations and conditions already were consistent with this
25 measure, making it unnecessary.

26 **Develop Additional Hydropower Generation**

27 Two measures were considered to increase hydropower potential in the study
28 area (see Table 2-5). Following is a brief description of each measure:

- 29 • **Modify existing/construct new generation facilities at Shasta Dam**
30 **to take advantage of increased hydraulic head** – This measure
31 consists of modifying the hydropower generation facilities at Shasta
32 Dam to take advantage of any increases in water surface elevations
33 resulting from enlarging the dam, if applicable. Nearly all releases from
34 Shasta and Keswick Dams are made through their generating facilities.
35 On occasion, however, outflows during flood operations are made
36 through the flood control outlets and over the spillway. During these
37 instances, the existing powerplant is bypassed for much of the flood
38 control (space evacuation) release. Power generated during these brief
39 and infrequent periods generally has a lower value due to usually
40 abundant supplies during winter periods. Raising Shasta Dam would
41 allow the potential to reduce these flood releases in winter and allow
42 water to pass through the generators later in the year when the water is
43 usually more valuable. Further, with higher water surface elevation,

1 greater energy levels (head) would be available for operating the
2 turbines. With the greater total head, the existing power facilities,
3 including turbines and penstocks, may need to be replaced, especially
4 with large dam raises (e.g., 100- or 200-foot raises). This measure was
5 retained for consideration as part of concept plans that include
6 modifying Shasta Dam.

- 7 • **Construct new hydropower generation facilities** – This measure
8 consists of constructing new hydropower facilities at Shasta Dam to
9 increase the electrical generation capabilities from the project. This
10 measure was deleted from further consideration primarily because it
11 would not contribute either directly or indirectly to addressing the
12 primary planning objectives and because it can be accomplished
13 independently of modifying Shasta Dam and Reservoir.

14 **Maintain and Increase Recreation Opportunities**

15 Recreation is not a specific purpose to the Shasta Division of the CVP. No
16 formal recreation facilities were developed as part of the original project.
17 However, in Public Law 89-336 (8 November 1965), Congress established the
18 Whiskeytown-Shasta-Trinity National Recreation Area (NRA). Resulting from
19 that act and subsequent direction, nearly all lands surrounding Shasta Lake that
20 were acquired for the construction and operation and maintenance of Shasta
21 Dam and Reservoir are now within the NRA. Recreation-related activities on
22 these lands and on Shasta Lake are administered by USFS under its
23 responsibility to manage the NRA.

24 Increasing the storage in Shasta Lake would provide a larger water surface for
25 recreation than exists today. Conversely, the larger lake area would also
26 adversely impact some of the existing facilities and activities. It is believed that
27 Reclamation has the authority to increase the size of Shasta Dam and Reservoir
28 without the requirement to mitigate for adverse impacts to the existing Federal
29 recreation-related facilities. However, doing so would be counterproductive to
30 the planning objectives of maintaining and increasing recreation opportunities at
31 Shasta Lake. In addition, raising Shasta Dam and Reservoir would also provide
32 opportunities to improve recreation resources in the area.

33 Accordingly, the following general measures were identified to help maintain
34 and increase recreation opportunities at Shasta Lake:

35 ***Maintain and Enhance Recreation Capacity, Facilities, and Opportunities***

36 Major recreation activities at Shasta Lake include the following:

- 37 • Water skiing/wakeboarding
- 38 • Using personal watercraft
- 39 • Fishing

- 1 • Houseboating
- 2 • Canoeing/kayaking
- 3 • Swimming

4 Water-related land activities include the following:

- 5 • Camping
- 6 • Hiking and backpacking
- 7 • Wildlife viewing
- 8 • Picnicking
- 9 • Interpretive program

10 Recreation is not a specific purpose of the Shasta Division of the CVP, and no
11 formal recreation facilities were developed as part of the original project.
12 However, in 1965, Congress established the Whiskeytown-Shasta-Trinity NRA.
13 As a result of that act and subsequent direction, USFS manages recreation
14 within the NRA, which includes managing numerous water resources and
15 related recreation activities at Shasta Lake. Increasing the storage in Shasta
16 Lake would provide a larger water surface for recreation.

17 This measure would focus on maintaining existing recreation capacity at Shasta
18 Dam and Lake through relocating and modernizing recreation facilities
19 adversely affected by a higher lake level. It also includes enhancing
20 opportunities related to the larger lake surface and modernized recreation
21 facilities. This measure was retained for further development in the SLWRI.

- 22 • **Develop New NRA Recreation Plan** – USFS has indicated a desire to
23 update the existing plan for the Whiskeytown-Shasta-Trinity NRA.
24 USFS would like to use the opportunity created by raising Shasta Dam
25 and Reservoir for that purpose. It is believed, however, that developing,
26 coordinating, and implementing a new NRA plan is a separate Federal
27 action and far outside the scope of the SLWRI. Accordingly, this
28 measure was deleted from further consideration in the SLWRI.

- 29 • **Reoperate Reservoir for Recreation** – This measure consists of
30 changing the established rules for operating Shasta Dam and Reservoir
31 for flood management to benefit recreation resources on Shasta Lake. A
32 claim by many of the recreation interests around Shasta Lake is that
33 often the lake is forced to draw down in early spring for flood control
34 and then, because of limited inflows the remainder of the season, the
35 lake cannot recover, which adversely impacts recreation (as well as
36 water supply). Locals cite 2004 as an example. They also claim that the

1 existing reservoir operation rules for flood control are outdated (based
2 on a USACE report dated 1977, nearly 30 years ago) and that by using
3 more recent data and current technologies, the drawdown would not be
4 required in some years, or would not be as significant. There is limited
5 potential for changes in flood management rules to allow for more
6 operational flexibility in reservoir drawdown requirements in response
7 to storms with improved advanced forecasting. Additionally, with an
8 increase in reservoir depth due to raising Shasta Dam, reservoir
9 reoperation would likely include raising the bottom of flood control
10 pool elevation, allowing for higher winter and spring water levels. This
11 measure was retained for further consideration primarily because it may
12 be compatible with any potential modification of Shasta Dam and
13 Reservoir. In addition, it would likely be compatible with other primary
14 and secondary planning objectives.

15 **Maintain or Improve Water Quality**

16 One management measure was considered to maintain or improve water quality
17 in the study area (see Table 2-5). Following is a brief description of the
18 measure, which was retained for further consideration:

- 19 • **Improve operational flexibility for Delta water quality by**
20 **increasing storage in Shasta Reservoir** – This measure consists of
21 providing improved operational flexibility for Delta water releases by
22 providing additional storage in Shasta Reservoir. Shasta Dam has the
23 ability to provide increased releases, as well as high flow releases, to
24 reestablish Delta water quality. Improved Delta water quality
25 conditions could provide benefits for both water supply reliability and
26 ecosystem restoration by potentially increasing Delta outflow during
27 drought years, and reducing salinity during critical periods. This
28 measure was added to the comprehensive plans and was retained
29 primarily because it had the potential to meet the secondary planning
30 objective of maintaining or improving water quality conditions in the
31 Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam and the Delta.

32 **Measures Summary**

33 Tables 2-6 and 2-7 summarize the water management measures that were
34 carried forward for potential inclusion in concept plans to address the primary
35 and secondary planning objectives, respectively. Those carried forward are
36 believed to best address the objectives of the SLWRI, with consideration of
37 planning constraints and criteria. It should be noted that measures that have
38 been dropped from consideration at this stage might be reconsidered in the
39 future as mitigation measures or other plan features. Similarly, additional
40 measures not considered herein may be added to alternative plans as they are
41 formulated.

1

Table 2-6. Measures Retained to Address the Primary Planning Objectives

| Primary Planning Objective | Management Measure | |
|-----------------------------------|--|---|
| Increase Anadromous Fish Survival | Restore Spawning Habitat (Abandoned Gravel Mines) ¹ | Restore abandoned gravel mines along the Sacramento River. |
| | Construct Instream Aquatic Habitat | Construct instream aquatic habitat downstream from Keswick Dam |
| | Replenish Spawning Gravel | Replenish spawning gravel in the Sacramento River. |
| | Modify TCD | Make additional modifications to Shasta Dam for temperature control. |
| | Enlarge Shasta Lake Cold-Water Pool | Enlarge Shasta Dam and Reservoir to increase the cold-water pool in the lake to benefit anadromous fish. |
| | Modify Storage and Release Operations at Shasta Dam | Modify storage and release operations at Shasta Dam to benefit anadromous fish |
| Increase Water Supply Reliability | Increase Conservation Storage | Increase conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir by raising Shasta Dam. |
| | Conjunctive Water Management ¹ | Develop conservation groundwater storage near the Sacramento River downstream from Shasta Dam. |
| | Reoperate Shasta Dam | Increase the effective conservation storage space in Shasta Reservoir by increasing the efficiency of reservoir operation for water supply reliability. |
| | Reduce Demand | Identify and implement, to the extent possible, water use efficiency methods. |

Notes:

¹ These measures were retained for development in concept plans in the initial alternatives phase, but were later eliminated from further consideration during the comprehensive plans phase.

Key:

TCD = temperature control device

2
3

1 **Table 2-7. Measures Retained to Address the Secondary Planning Objectives**

| Secondary Planning Objective | Management Measure | |
|--|--|--|
| Conserve, Restore, and Enhance Ecosystem Resources | Restore Shoreline Aquatic Habitat | Construct shoreline fish habitat around Shasta Lake. |
| | Restore Tributary Aquatic Habitat | Construct instream fish habitat on tributaries to Shasta Lake. |
| | Restore Riparian Habitat | Restore riparian and floodplain habitat along the upper Sacramento River. |
| Reduce Flood Damage | Modify Flood Operations Guidelines | Update Shasta Dam and Reservoir flood management operations. |
| | Route PMF From Top of Conservation Pool ¹ | Route the Probable Maximum Flood from the top of the conservation pool in Shasta Reservoir. |
| Develop Additional Hydropower Generation | Modify Hydropower Facilities | Modify existing/construct new generation facilities at Shasta Dam to take advantage of increased head. |
| Maintain and Increase Recreation | Maintain and Enhance Recreation Facilities | Maintain and enhance recreation capacity, facilities, and opportunities. |
| | Reoperate Reservoir | Increase recreation use by stabilizing early season filling in Shasta Lake. |
| Maintain or Improve Water Quality | Increase Operational Flexibility | Improve operational flexibility for Delta water quality by increasing storage in Shasta Reservoir. |

Notes:

¹ These measures were retained for development in concept plans in the initial alternatives phase, but were later eliminated from further consideration during the comprehensive plans phase.

Key:

PMF = Probable Maximum Flood

2
3

1
2

This page left blank intentionally.

Chapter 3

Shasta Dam and Reservoir Enlargement Scenarios

This chapter summarizes information developed on enlargement scenarios for Shasta Dam and Reservoir and identifies potential sizes recommended for further development into concept plans.

In the 1999 Reclamation report titled *Appraisal Assessment of the Potential for Enlarging Shasta Dam and Reservoir* (Reclamation 1999), an evaluation was made of the major features, issues, and costs associated with three potential raise scenarios for Shasta Dam and Reservoir: Low-Raise Option (6.5-foot raise), Intermediate-Raise Option (102.5-foot raise), and High-Raise Option (202.5-foot raise). Information from the report was reviewed and is summarized in this appraisal-level assessment.

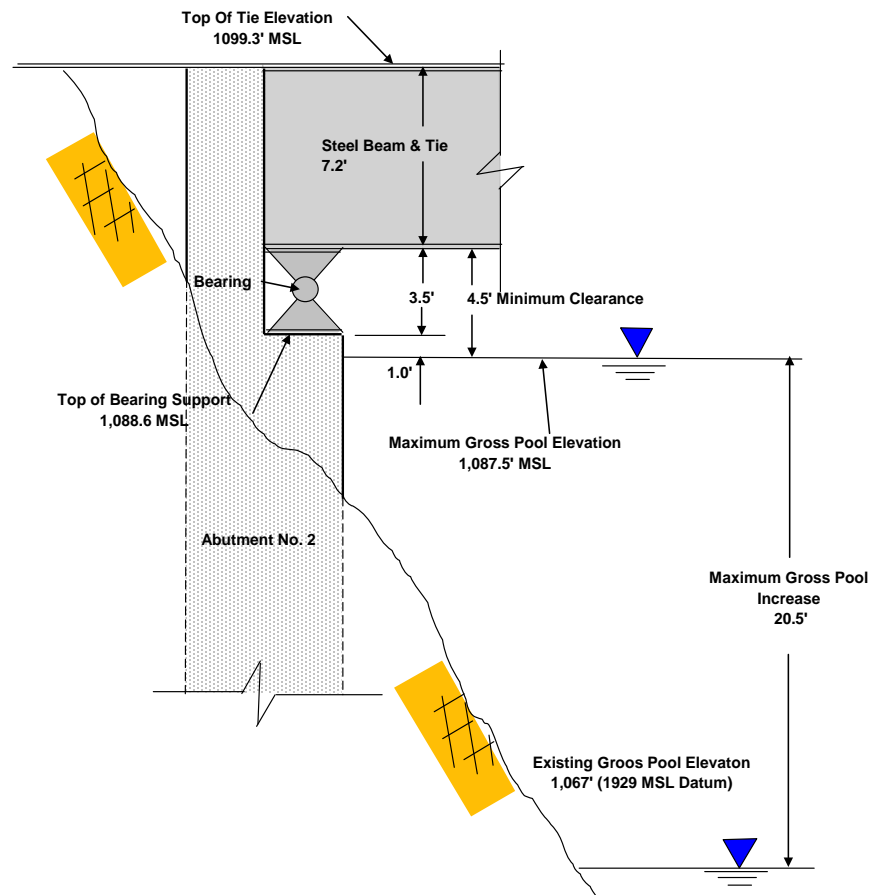
A breakpoint analysis was conducted in early 2003 to identify the elevations of Shasta Dam raises for which implementation costs would considerably change due to the need for relocations or modifications of major project features (Reclamation 2004a). The analysis identified two fundamental cost components associated with raising Shasta Dam and enlarging Shasta Reservoir: (1) modifying the main dam and appurtenances and (2) modifying reservoir infrastructure and facilities. It was concluded in the analysis that the first major breakpoint in costs for increasing the size of Shasta Reservoir would occur with a top-of-full-pool raise from elevation 1,067 to about elevation 1,087.5 (20.5-foot raise), which would correspond to a dam raise of about 18.5 feet. This is primarily due to the need to relocate the Pit River Bridge with dam raises greater than about 18.5 feet. The second major breakpoint would occur with a top-of-full-pool raise to about elevation 1,100, which would correspond to a dam raise of about 30 feet. Raises of up to about 30 feet could likely be accomplished by raising the existing dam crest while higher dam raises would require increasing the dam mass, and constructing cofferdams and other facilities. Accordingly, two additional dam raise scenarios (approximately 18.5 and 30 feet) were developed in an effort to assess the relationship between the height of a dam raise and resulting cost of new water supplies.

Information is presented below on (1) rationale for establishing a dam raise of 18.5 feet and (2) the three scenarios included in the 1999 report and two expanded low-level dam raise scenarios. Also included is a comparison of the various dam raise scenarios.

1 Rationale for 18.5-Foot Dam Raise

2 As mentioned, it is estimated that the Pit River Bridge would need to be
3 relocated for Shasta Dam raises greater than about 18.5 feet. A dam raise of
4 18.5 feet would allow for an increase in the full pool by about 20.5 feet or from
5 elevation 1,067 to about elevation 1,087.5. Even with dam raises up to 18.5
6 feet, considerable modifications would need to be made to two piers of the
7 bridge. These modifications are described in the Engineering Summary
8 Appendix.

9 Figure 3-1 shows an elevation view of the Pit River Bridge south Abutment
10 Number 2. Correspondence from the Union Pacific Railroad Company (UPRR)
11 identified a minimum clearance between the low cord of the bridge and an
12 increased water surface of 4 feet. The lowest point of the Pit River Bridge is at
13 the south end of the structure. For this project, a minimum clearance of 1 foot
14 below the south abutment bearing attachment to the main bridge structure was
15 selected. This would allow a minimum clearance of 4.5 feet between the new
16 full pool elevation and the main bridge structural elements.



17
18 **Figure 3-1. Elevation Sketch Showing the South End of the Pit River**
19 **Bridge with Respect to the Existing and Increased Full Pool Elevation at**
20 **Shasta Lake**

1 It should be mentioned that storage in Shasta Reservoir, with or without raising
2 the dam, is expected to reach full pool elevation in the future about as often it
3 has in the past. This occurs to about once every 3 to 4 years, after the flood
4 season, usually in May and/or early June. Durations would be only several days
5 at the maximum elevation, but the high water condition could last several
6 weeks. The south end of the Pit River Bridge is about 11 feet lower than the
7 north end of the structure. Accordingly, the likely minimum clearance between
8 the bridge and full pool elevation available for boat traffic during high water
9 periods would be about 15 feet.

10 **Dam Raise Scenarios**

11 Following is a description of the three dam raise scenarios included in the 1999
12 appraisal report (Reclamation 1999) and two expanded low-level scenarios.

13 **Low-Level Raise – 6.5 Feet**

14 Major components, accomplishments and costs, system yield, implementation
15 costs, and unit costs for the low-level raise (6.5 feet) are described in this
16 section.

17 ***Major Components***

18 The 6.5-foot Low-Level Raise scenario consists of a structural dam raise of 6.5
19 feet with a new enlarged crest elevation at 1,084 feet. This scenario would have
20 a new top of joint-use storage space at elevation 1,075.5, and result in an
21 additional 8.5 feet of water in the reservoir. The total capacity of this new
22 reservoir would be 4.84 MAF, which is an increase of 256,000 acre-feet above
23 the existing available storage. At full pool storage, the reservoir would cover
24 about 30,700 acres, which is an increase of about 1,100 acres over existing
25 conditions (4 percent increase). Table 3-1 lists major features associated with
26 this dam raise scenario.

1 **Table 3-1. Shasta Dam and Reservoir Enlargement Features**

| Item | Baseline | Low-Level Raise – 6.5 Feet | Expanded Low-Level Raise – 18.5 Feet | Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30 Feet | Inter-mediate-Level Raise – 102.5 Feet | High-Level Raise – 202.5 Feet |
|--|----------|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|--|-------------------------------|
| Dam Crest Raise (feet) | NA | 6.50 | 18.50 | 30.00 | 102.50 | 202.50 |
| Dam Crest Elevation (feet) | 1,077.50 | 1,084.00 | 1,096.00 | 1,107.50 | 1,180.00 | 1,280.00 |
| Full Pool Raise (feet) | NA | 8.50 | 20.50 | 32.00 | 104.50 | 204.50 |
| Full Pool Elevation (feet) | 1,067.00 | 1,075.50 | 1,087.50 | 1,099.00 | 1,171.50 | 1,271.50 |
| Reservoir Capacity (MAF) | 4.55 | 4.81 | 5.19 | 5.57 | 8.47 | 13.89 |
| Surface Area @ Full Pool Elevation (acres) | 29,600 | 30,700 | 32,100 | 33,700 | 44,200 | 60,800 |
| Capacity Increase (MAF) | NA | 0.26 | 0.63 | 1.02 | 3.92 | 9.34 |

Key:
 MAF = million acre-feet
 NA = not applicable

2 The dam raise would be limited to the existing dam crest and appurtenant
 3 structures only, with mass concrete placed in blocks on the existing concrete
 4 gravity section and precast concrete panels used to retain compacted earthfill
 5 placed on wing dam embankment sections. A new spillway crest section would
 6 be developed within the raised structure. Control features of the existing TCD
 7 would be extended up to the new crest elevation and the main TCD enclosure
 8 would be extended to the new full pool elevation.

9 Although the raised dam crest construction would remain above the new top of
 10 joint-use storage, and provide for flood surcharge only, waterstops and other
 11 seepage control measures would be provided. However, with a new full pool
 12 elevation of 1,075.5, about seven existing vehicle and railroad bridges would
 13 need to be either considerably modified or relocated. Table 3-2 lists estimated
 14 infrastructure impacts associated with various increases in full pool. Minor
 15 modifications to the Pit River Bridge, which carries Interstate 5 (I-5) and the
 16 Water Use Efficiency near Bridge Bay, would be required with this scenario.

17 The expanded full pool would impact about 45 structures, which would need to
 18 be removed or relocated (see Figure 3-2). However, few impacts would occur to
 19 reservoir rim ecosystem resources or reservoir-area developed properties.

20

1 **Table 3-2. Reservoir Infrastructure Impacts and Actions for Elevations 1,070 – 1,280¹**

| New Top of Joint-Use Elevation | Impact Remediation Actions |
|--------------------------------|---|
| 1,072 | Relocate UPRR Doney Creek Bridge, UPRR Sacramento River Bridge (2nd Crossing), relocate segment of Bully Hill Road impacted on Squaw Creek Arm |
| 1,073 | Relocate portion of Lakeshore Drive impacted by Charlie Creek Bridge |
| 1,074 | Relocate McCloud River Bridge and Didallas Creek Bridge; relocate portion of Silverthorn Road impacted on Pit River Arm |
| 1,075 | Relocate Second Creek Bridge |
| 1,076 | Relocate portion of Lakeshore Drive impacted by Doney Creek Bridge |
| 1,077 | Relocate portion of impacted Conflict Point Road (on north side of Salt Creek) |
| 1,078 | Build embankment for UPRR at Bridge Bay |
| 1,080 | Build embankment for I-5 at Lakeshore; relocate portion of Gilman Road impacted near McCloud Bridge, and portion of Fender Ferry Road impacted near McCloud Bridge |
| 1,090 | Relocate UPRR Lakeshore Drive Overcrossing by Charlie Creek |
| 1,091 | Relocate Pit River Bridge; relocate UPRR Sacramento River Bridge (2nd Crossing); relocate portion of I-5 impacted by Lakeshore (not necessary with protective dike) |
| 1,094 | Relocate UPRR Lakeshore Drive Overcrossing by Doney Creek |
| 1,096 | Relocate Wittawaket Creek Bridge and UPRR Sacramento River Bridge, 3rd Crossing |
| 1,097 | Relocate UPRR I-5 overpass |
| 1,099 | Relocate Squaw Creek Bridge |
| 1,100 | Begin to remediate impacts to Silverthorn community (population 1,100 to 1,250) |
| 1,105 | Relocate portion of West Side Road impacted at Squaw Creek Bridge |
| 1,106 | Reservoir full pool at top of powerhouse at Pit 7 Dam ² |
| 1,109 | Relocate UPRR Sacramento River Bridge, 4th Crossing |
| 1,110 | Relocate UPRR Dog Creek Bridge |
| 1,111 | Relocate UPRR Salt Creek Bridge |
| 1,114 | Relocate Fender Ferry Bridge (Sacramento River near Delta) |
| 1,134 | Jones Valley Dike becomes necessary |
| 1,135 | Relocate Fender Ferry Bridge (upper Pit River) |
| 1,143 | Relocate Tunnel Gulch Viaduct on I-5; relocate UPRR O'Brien Creek Bridge |
| 1,150 | Begin to remediate impacts to town of Delta (population 1,150 to 1,190) |
| 1,165 | Begin to remediate impacts to town of Pollock (population 1,165 to ~1,220) |
| 1,170 | Begin to remediate impacts to town of Lakehead (population 1,170 to ~1,220) |
| 1,172 | Relocate UPRR O'Brien Creek Bridge |
| 1,180 | Clickapudi Cove Dike becomes necessary |
| 1,230 | Bridge Bay and Centimundi dikes become necessary |
| 1,278 | Reservoir full pool at crest of Pit 7 Dam ² |

Notes:

¹ This table does not include impacts to specific buildings. Impacted portions of roads, communities, and other infrastructure would be relocated where possible. In cases where relocation is not feasible, facilities may need to be abandoned.

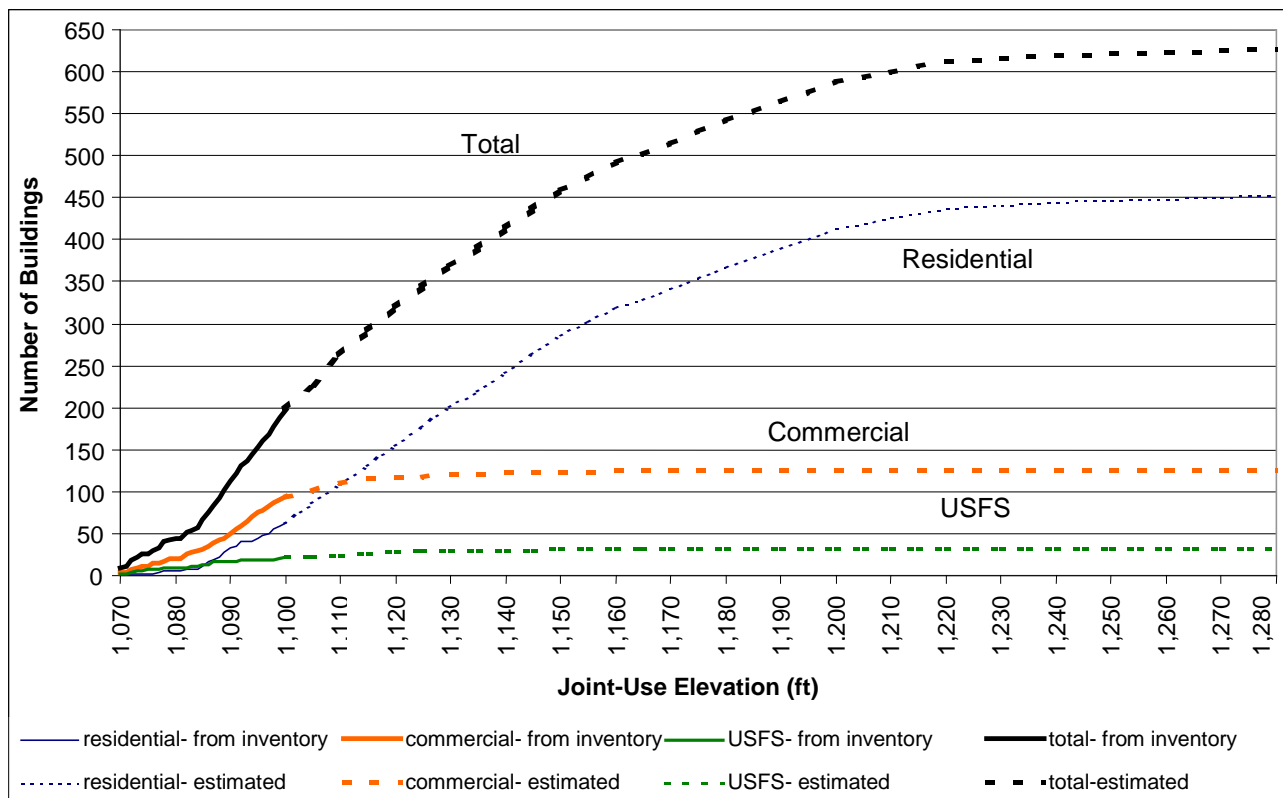
² Specific remediation actions at the Pit 7 Dam have not yet been determined. The elevation at which the dam would likely need to be abandoned is between elevation 1,106 (powerhouse yard floor) and elevation 1,278 (crest of dam).

Key:

Delta = Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta

I-5 = Interstate 5

UPRR = Union Pacific Railroad



1
2 **Figure 3-2. Estimated Number of Structures Affected by Increasing the Height of Shasta**
3 **Dam and Reservoir**

4 **Accomplishments and Costs**

5 Although not to the extent of higher raises and associated larger reservoir sizes,
6 this scenario would have the potential to contribute to both primary planning
7 objectives and is also consistent with the goals in the CALFED ROD (CALFED
8 2000). It could support each of the secondary planning objectives and help
9 increase anadromous fish survival by creation of a small increased cold-water
10 pool. In addition, it could help reduce flood damage along the upper Sacramento
11 River, increase hydropower generation, and slightly increase potential reservoir
12 area recreation opportunities. It would also have minor impacts on the McCloud
13 River and associated issues relating to the State special designation of that
14 waterway.

15 **System Yield**

16 Water system operation studies for the CVP and SWP were made using the
17 CalSim-II mathematical model for the five dam raise scenarios described in this
18 section. Table 3-3 compares annual yield for simulated CVP and SWP
19 deliveries for average year and drought year, conditions with Banks Pumping
20 Plant capacity at 6,680 cfs, for various Shasta Dam raise scenarios. The table
21 shows the relative increase in reliability of each dam raise scenario to meet

1 future demands. As expected, higher dam raise scenarios have a considerably
2 higher potential to meet future demands.

3 It should be mentioned that the estimated system yield shown in Table 3-3,
4 which was estimated in 2003, differs from that shown in other sections of this
5 appendix and in the main report. This is due to continuing updates in the
6 CalSim-II model. It is important to understand that these differences in system
7 yields would not change the fundamental conclusions reached concerning cost
8 efficiencies associated with relative increases of Shasta Dam and Reservoir.

9 **Table 3-3. CVP/SWP System Yield Increase (2003 Estimates)**

| Dam Raise | Average Year Conditions ¹ (TAF per year) | Drought Year Conditions ¹ (TAF per year) |
|---------------------------------------|---|---|
| Low-Level Raise – 6.5 Feet | 48 | 72 |
| Expanded Low-Level Raise – 18 Feet | 71 | 125 |
| Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30 Feet | 110 | 185 |
| Intermediate-Level Raise – 102.5 Feet | 214 | 425 |
| High-Level Raise – 202.5 Feet | 331 | 703 |

Note:

¹ Yields differ from other sections of appendix and main report due to update of CalSim-II model used. Differences are relative and do not change the overall conclusions reached.

Key:

CVP = Central Valley Project
SWP = State Water Project
TAF = thousand acre-feet

10 **Preliminary Implementation Costs** Preliminary estimates of total first and
11 annual costs for Shasta Dam raise scenarios were developed for relative
12 comparison purposes. Costs were based primarily on updating information
13 contained in Reclamation’s 1999 appraisal report to October 2003 price levels, a
14 5-5/8 percent interest rate, and a 100-year analysis period. Estimated costs are
15 summarized in Table 3-4.

16 It should be mentioned that, as with system yield above, the costs shown here
17 will differ from those shown elsewhere in this appendix and in the main report.
18 This is primarily due to updates in cost estimates and price level changes.
19 However, it is important to note that these changes would not change the
20 fundamental conclusions reached concerning cost efficiencies associated with
21 relative increases of Shasta Dam and Reservoir.

22

1 **Table 3-4. First and Annual Costs for Dam Raise Options**

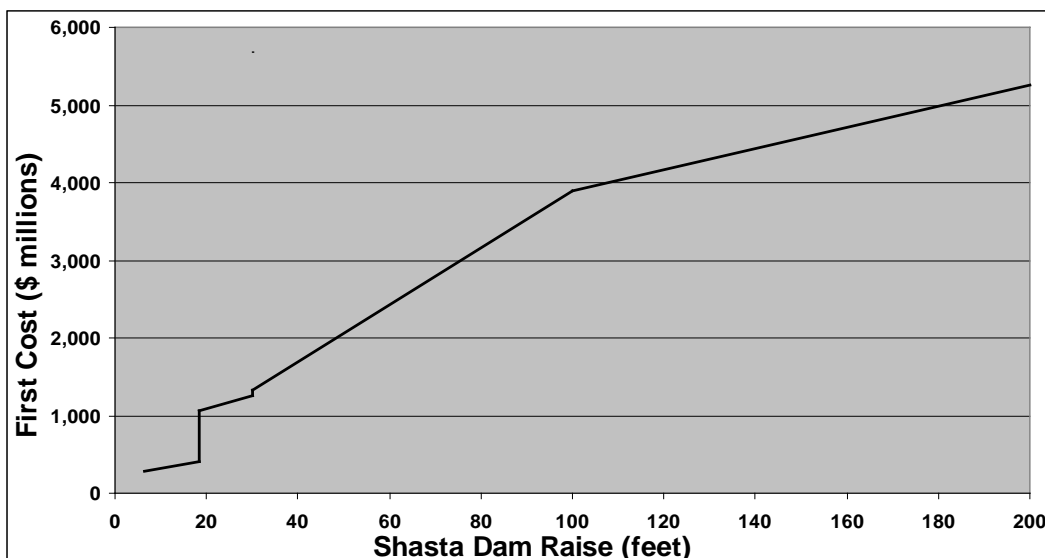
| Dam Raise Options | First Cost @ 2003 Price Levels (\$millions) ¹ | Annual Costs @ 2003 Price Levels (\$millions) ² |
|--|--|--|
| Low-Level Raise | 282 | 19 |
| Expanded Low-Level Raise – 18.5 Feet (without major relocations) | 408 | 28 |
| Expanded Low-Level Raise – 18.5 Feet (with major relocations) | 1,060 | 75 |
| Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30 Feet (block raise) | 1,250 | 89 |
| Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30 Feet (mass raise) | 1,330 | 94 |
| Intermediate-Level Raise – 102.5 Feet | 3,890 | 283 |
| High-Level Raise – 202.5 Feet | 5,250 | 383 |

Notes:

¹ Most information updated by price levels and interest rates from May 1999 Shasta Dam and Reservoir Enlargement, Appraisal Assessment, by Reclamation. October 2003 price levels.

² Construction period of 6 years for lower raise scenarios, and 8 to 10 years for higher raise scenarios. Average annual costs based on 5-5/8 percent over a 100-year project life.

2 Figure 3-3 shows the estimated first cost for each scenario; two cost estimates
 3 were developed for each Expanded Low-Level Raise scenario. The intent of the
 4 two estimates was to determine the influence of major cost breaks or jumps
 5 resulting from implementing major relocations for the 18.5-foot raise scenario,
 6 and additional dam construction costs for the 30-foot raise scenario. Cost
 7 estimates for each Expanded Low-Level Raise scenario in the table are based
 8 primarily on interpolating costs between the Low-Level and Intermediate-Level
 9 raises.



10 **Figure 3-3. Estimated First Cost for Various Shasta Dam Raises at 2003**
 11 **Price Levels**
 12

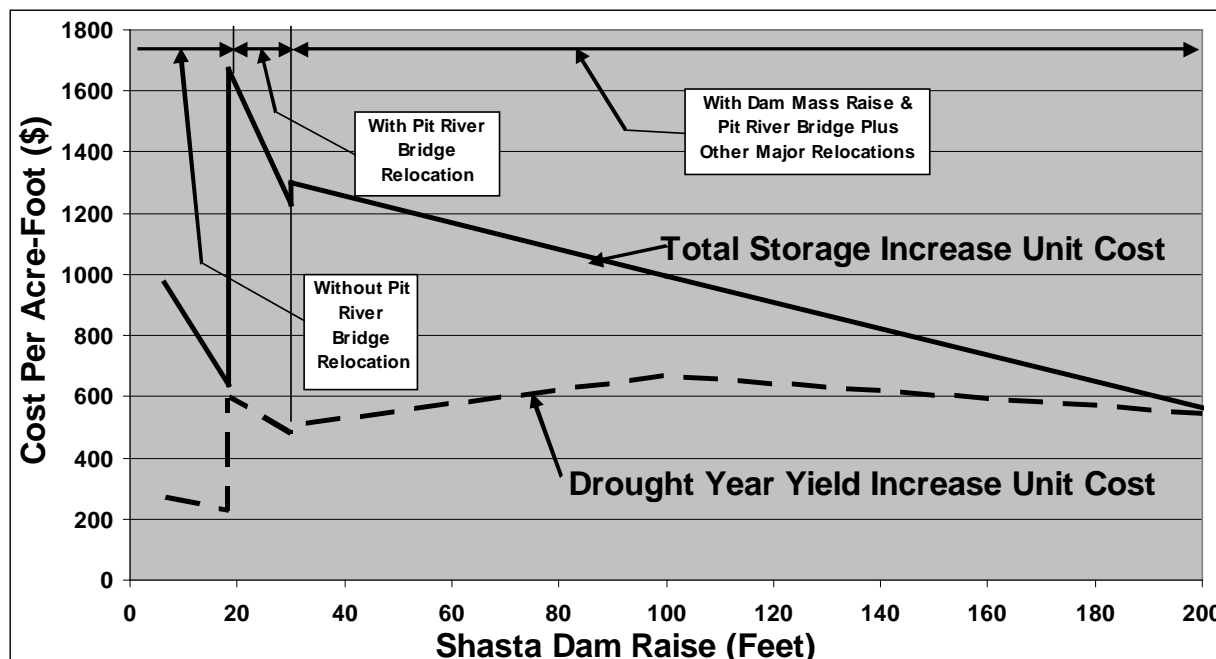
1 **Unit Costs** Table 3-5 summarizes the estimated total storage, water supply
 2 yield, and first and annual costs for each scenario considered. The table also
 3 shows the estimated unit cost of water for the various dam raise scenarios, and
 4 estimates of unit costs for the two Expanded Low-Level scenarios, including
 5 major relocations and dam construction costs at estimated major breakpoints.
 6 The total storage unit cost in the table is the estimated cost to develop an acre-
 7 foot of new storage. Total storage unit cost is the total first cost divided by the
 8 additional storage created by the scenario. The unit cost for new water supply
 9 yield is computed using estimates of both average annual and drought yield.
 10 Unit cost information from Table 3-5 as a function of new dam crest elevation
 11 was used to create the plot in Figure 3-4. The need for major relocations
 12 (primarily for I-5 and UPRR facilities) for a dam raise of about 18.5 feet
 13 (elevation 1,095) has a dramatic effect on the estimated unit cost for new
 14 storage and new water supplies at Shasta. The need to change construction
 15 methods for a dam raise of about 30 feet (elevation 1,107.5) has a considerably
 16 smaller influence.

17 **Table 3-5. Water Supply Unit Cost Summary (2003 conditions)**

| Description | Low-Level Raise – 6.5 Feet | Expanded Low-Level Raise – 18.5 Feet | | Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30 Feet | | Intermediate-Level Raise | High-Level Raise |
|---|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|--------------|------------------------------------|------------|--------------------------|------------------|
| | | Without Bridges | With Bridges | Block Raise | Mass Raise | | |
| Added Storage (1,000 acre-feet) | 256 | 634 | 634 | 1,020 | 1,020 | 3,920 | 9,340 |
| Yield (1,000 acre-feet per year) | | | | | | | |
| - Average Annual | 48 | 71 | 71 | 110 | 110 | 214 | 331 |
| - Drought Year | 72 | 125 | 125 | 185 | 185 | 425 | 703 |
| Unit Cost (\$/acre-foot)¹ | | | | | | | |
| - Total Storage ² | 970 | 640 | 1,670 | 1,230 | 1,300 | 990 | 560 |
| - Yield – Average Annual ³ | 410 | 400 | 1,050 | 810 | 850 | 1,320 | 1,160 |
| - Yield – Drought Year ⁴ | 270 | 225 | 600 | 480 | 510 | 670 | 550 |

Notes:
¹ First cost divided by increase in total storage.
² Annual cost divided by average annual yield.
³ Annual cost divided by drought year yield.

18
19



1
2 **Figure 3-4. Plot of Total Storage and Water Supply Reliability Yield Unit Cost (2003 price**
3 **levels) for Various Increases of Shasta Dam Raise**

4 **Expanded Low-Level Raise – 18.5 Feet**

5 Major components, accomplishments, and costs for the Expanded Low-Level
6 Raise (18.5 feet) are described in this section.

7 **Major Components**

8 This scenario consists of a structural dam raise of 18.5 feet with a new crest at
9 elevation 1,096. The total capacity of this new reservoir would be 5.19 MAF,
10 which is an increase of 634,000 acre-feet above the existing available storage.
11 At full pool storage, the reservoir would cover about 32,100 acres, which is an
12 increase of about 2,500 acres over existing conditions (9 percent).

13 The dam raise would be limited to the existing dam crest and appurtenant
14 structures only, with mass concrete placed in blocks on the existing concrete
15 gravity section and concrete wing dams constructed on both abutments. A new
16 spillway crest section would be developed within the raised structure. Control
17 features of the existing TCD would be raised up to the new crest elevation and
18 the main TCD enclosure would be extended to the new full pool elevation.

19 The 18.5-foot Expanded Low-Level Raise scenario would require a new crest
20 roadway, spillway bridge, elevators, gantry crane, and associated mechanical
21 equipment required for operating the various outlet gates, TCD, and other
22 features. Although the raised dam crest construction would remain above the
23 new top of joint-use storage, and provide for flood surcharge only; waterstops
24 and other seepage control measures would be provided.

1 As can be determined from Table 3-2, with the increased full pool at elevation
2 1,087.5, an estimated seven bridges in the reservoir area would need to be
3 modified and/or relocated. Pending the results of additional analysis, it appears
4 that this scenario represents the likely greatest dam raise without full relocation
5 of I-5 and the UPRR Pit River Bridge at Bridge Bay. Even at a full pool
6 elevation increase of 20.5 feet, the water surface would encroach to within 4
7 feet of the low cord of the bridge, which is believed to be the minimum
8 freeboard allowable before full relocation for railroad bridges. To prevent
9 adverse impacts to two bridge piers (Piers 3 and 4) resulting from periodic
10 inundation, the project would include constructing a skirting system around the
11 upper portions of the piers. For clearance for houseboats, a maximum full pool
12 raise would be limited to about 14 feet. However, it is believed that because of
13 the infrequent occurrences of the water surface reaching full pool during high
14 recreation periods, appropriate mitigation features can be included for this
15 scenario.

16 The expanded full pool area would require about 130 structures (2003 estimate)
17 to be removed or relocated (see Figure 3-2). Relatively minor impacts would
18 occur to reservoir rim ecosystem resources. However, this scenario also
19 includes relocating many reservoir area recreation facilities.

Accomplishments and Costs

20 This scenario would contribute considerably to both primary planning
21 objectives. It also could support each secondary planning objective. Increasing
22 the full pool storage at Shasta Reservoir by about 634,000 acre-feet by raising
23 the dam 18.5 feet would increase the average annual and annual drought year
24 yield based on 2003 CalSim-II modeling assumptions by about 71,000 and
25 125,000 acre-feet (67,000 and 133,000 acre-feet in 2006 evaluations),
26 respectively (see Table 3-5). It could also help increase anadromous fish
27 survival by increasing the cold-water pool. In addition, it could help reduce
28 flood damages along the upper Sacramento River, and increase hydropower
29 generation. It would slightly increase potential reservoir area recreation
30 opportunities. This scenario is generally consistent with the goals and objectives
31 in the 2000 CALFED ROD. It would have minor and manageable impacts on
32 the McCloud River and issues relating to the State special designation of that
33 waterway.
34

35 As shown in Table 3-4, to accomplish this magnitude of dam raise without
36 major reservoir area relocations, the estimated first cost based on 2003 price
37 levels for this scenario would be about \$408 million. The estimated average
38 annual cost would be about \$28 million. This would result in a unit cost for the
39 new storage space in Shasta Reservoir of about \$640 per acre-foot (Table 3-5).
40 The resulting estimated unit costs for average annual and drought year yield
41 would be about \$400 and \$225 per acre-foot, respectively (see Figure 3-4).

42 Tables 3-4 and 3-5 and Figures 3-3 and 3-4 also show the estimated impact on
43 the first, annual, and unit costs for an 18.5-foot dam raise, including the possible

1 relocation of I-5 and the UPRR Pit River Bridge at Bridge Bay. It is believed
2 that this relocation would be needed for a dam raise greater than about 18.5 feet.
3 With these additional relocations, the first cost would increase to an estimated
4 \$1.06 billion. The estimated total unit storage cost would increase to about
5 \$1,670 per acre-foot. The estimated unit cost for average annual and drought
6 year yield would be about \$1,050 and \$600 per acre-foot, respectively.

7 **Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30 Feet**

8 Major components and accomplishments and costs for the Expanded Low-Level
9 Raise (30 feet) are described in this section.

10 ***Major Components***

11 This scenario consists of a structural dam raise of 30 feet with a new crest at
12 elevation 1,107.5 (see Table 3-1). This scenario would have a new top of joint-
13 use (full pool) storage space at elevation 1,099, resulting in an additional 32 feet
14 of water in the reservoir. The total capacity of this new reservoir would be 5.57
15 MAF, an increase of 1.02 MAF above the existing available storage. At full
16 pool storage, the reservoir would cover about 33,700 acres, which is an increase
17 of about 4,100 acres over existing conditions (14 percent).

18 This scenario represents the likely greatest dam raise without major
19 modification of the dam mass (concrete overlay on downstream face) and
20 replacement of wing dams, river outlets, and penstocks. The dam raise would be
21 limited to the existing dam crest and appurtenant structures only, with mass
22 concrete placed in blocks on the existing concrete gravity section and concrete
23 wing dams constructed on both abutments. A new spillway crest section would
24 be developed within the raised structure. Control features of the existing TCD
25 would be raised up to the new crest elevation and the main TCD enclosure
26 would be extended to the new full pool elevation.

27 The 30-foot Expanded Low-Level Raise scenario would require a new crest
28 roadway, spillway bridge, elevators and gantry crane, and associated
29 mechanical equipment required for operating the various outlet gates, TCD, and
30 other features. Although the raised dam crest construction would remain above
31 the new top of joint-use storage, and provide for flood surcharge only,
32 waterstops and other seepage control measures would be provided.

33 The expanded full pool area would require about 200 structures to be removed
34 or relocated (see Figure 3-2). This scenario would also result in impacts to
35 various major and minor transportation, recreation, hydropower, and other
36 reservoir area facilities. In addition, it would require replacement of the Pit
37 River Bridge at Bridge Bay and 12 other major and minor reservoir area bridges
38 and roadway segments. Also, most recreational facilities would require
39 relocation. Considerable impacts to reservoir rim and tributary stream
40 ecosystem resources would occur.

1 **Accomplishments and Costs**

2 This scenario also would contribute considerably to both primary planning
3 objectives and support each of the secondary planning objectives. Increasing the
4 full pool storage at Shasta Reservoir by over 1 MAF through raising the dam 30
5 feet would increase the average annual and annual drought year yield to the
6 CVP by an estimated 110,000 and 185,000 acre-feet, respectively (see Table
7 3-5). It could help increase anadromous fish survival by creating an increased
8 cold-water pool. In addition, it could help reduce flood damages along the upper
9 Sacramento River, and increase hydropower generation. It would increase
10 potential reservoir area recreation opportunities. This scenario is generally
11 consistent with the goals and objectives in the 2000 CALFED ROD. It would,
12 however, have impacts on the lower McCloud River and issues relating to the
13 State of California Species of Special Concern designation in that watershed.

14 As shown in Table 3-4 and Figure 3-3, the estimated first cost based on 2003
15 price levels for this scenario would be about \$1.25 billion. The estimated
16 average annual cost is \$89 million. This would result in a unit cost for the new
17 storage space in Shasta Reservoir of about \$1,230 per acre-foot (Table 3-5).
18 Estimated unit costs for average annual and drought year yield would be about
19 \$810 and \$480 per acre-foot, respectively.

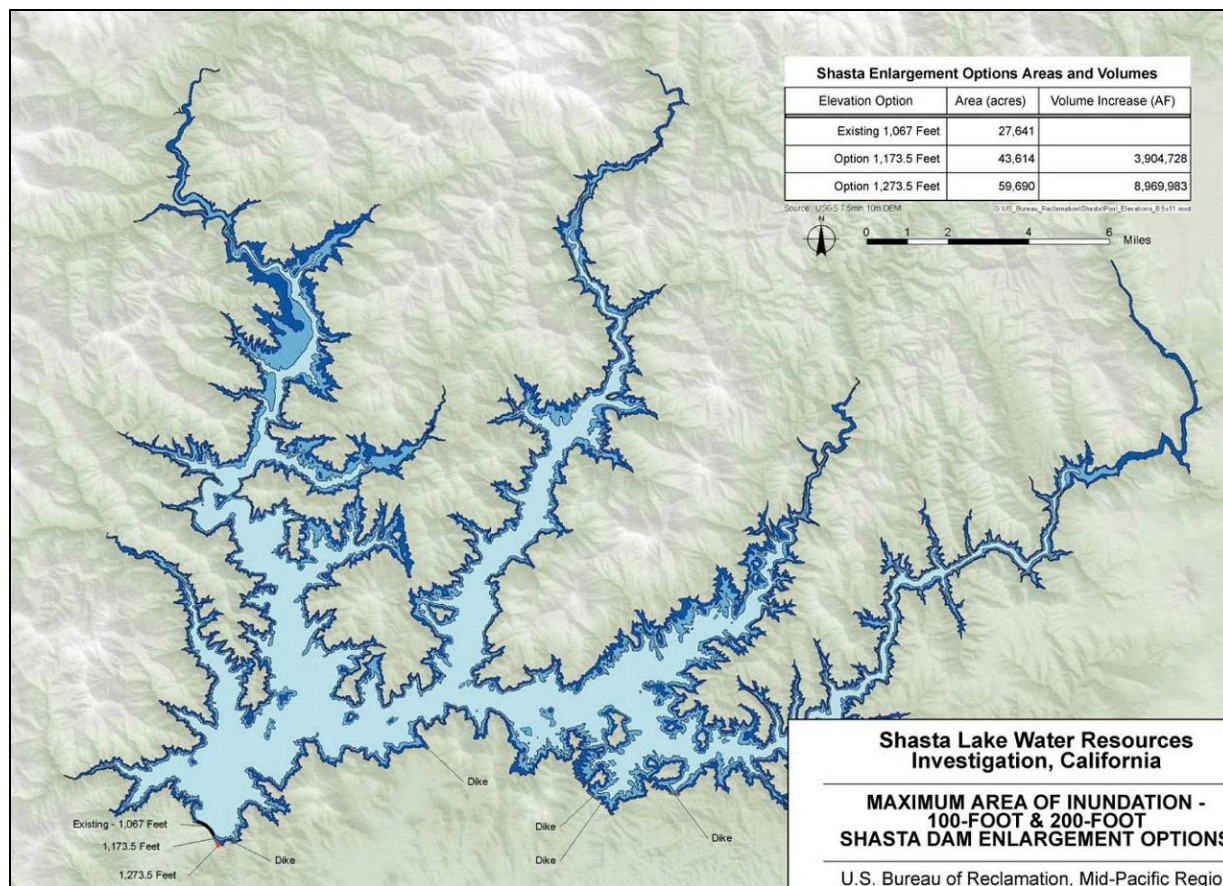
20 It is believed that for dam raises greater than about 30 to 50 feet, the existing
21 concrete gravity dam section would need to be raised using a mass concrete
22 overlay as opposed to raising the dam using concrete blocks. Tables 3-4 and 3-5
23 and Figures 3-3 and 3-4 also show the estimated impact on first, annual, and
24 unit costs for a 30-foot dam raise, including this change in construction method.
25 With the mass concrete overlay raise, the first cost would increase to an
26 estimated \$1.33 billion and the estimated total unit storage cost would increase
27 to about \$1,300 per acre-foot. The estimated unit cost for average annual and
28 drought year yield would be about \$850 and \$510 per acre-foot, respectively.

29 **Intermediate-Level Raise – 102.5 Feet**

30 Major components and accomplishments and costs for the Intermediate-Level
31 Raise (102.5 feet) are described in this section.

32 **Major Components**

33 The Intermediate-Level Raise scenario consists of a structural dam raise of
34 102.5 feet to a new crest at elevation 1,180 (see Table 3-1). The new top of
35 joint-use storage space would be at elevation 1,171.5. This would allow for
36 storage of an additional 104.5 feet of water in the reservoir above the existing
37 joint-use storage pool elevation. Total capacity of this new reservoir would be
38 8.47 MAF, or an increase of 3.92 MAF above the existing available storage. At
39 full pool storage, the reservoir would cover about 44,200 acres, which is an
40 increase of about 14,600 acres over existing conditions (49 percent). Figure 3-5
41 includes the aerial extent of the Intermediate-Level Raise scenario in
42 relationship to other dam raise scenarios being considered.



1
2 **Figure 3-5. Shasta Lake Maximum Area of Inundation for 100-foot and 200-foot Dam**
3 **Raise Options**

4 The existing concrete gravity dam section would be raised using a mass
5 concrete overlay on the main section of the dam with roller-compacted concrete
6 wing dams constructed on both abutments. The left wing dam would extend
7 approximately 1,380 feet, and the right wing dam would extend approximately
8 420 feet. The mass concrete overlay on the downstream face of the existing dam
9 in the main section would extend from elevation 1,180 down to the foundation
10 contact at the downstream toe on a 0.7:1 slope. The spillway section would be
11 made thicker to accommodate the gated spillway crest.

12 This dam raise scenario would require a new crest roadway, spillway bridge,
13 elevators, and a gantry crane, and associated mechanical equipment required for
14 operating the various outlet gates, TCD, and other features. It would also
15 involve constructing two new saddle dikes at Jones Valley and Clickapudi
16 Creek.

17 The expanded full pool area would require about 520 structures to be removed
18 or relocated (see Figure 3-2). This scenario also would result in impacts to
19 numerous major and minor transportation, recreation, hydropower, and other
20 reservoir area facilities. New power facilities would likely be needed at Shasta

1 Dam, primarily including improvements to the existing penstocks. In addition,
2 most recreational facilities would require relocation. Considerable impacts
3 would occur to historical and cultural resources in the Shasta Lake area. Major
4 impacts would occur to reservoir area and tributary stream ecosystem resources.
5 The Intermediate-Level Raise would also require relocation or abandonment of
6 the Pacific Gas and Electric Company (PG&E) Pit 7 Dam and Powerhouse on
7 the upper Pit River just upstream from Shasta Lake.

8 It is important to note that in addition to the Pit River Bridge, which would be
9 the single most costly relocation item associated with a dam raise, 20 other
10 bridges cross Shasta Lake or one of its tributaries. A considerable number of
11 bridge relocations would be required with minor increases in the top of joint-use
12 elevation, and all of the main reservoir bridges would need to be relocated with
13 a top of joint-use raise of about 73 feet. However, with greater increases in top
14 of joint-use elevations, major railroad and/or roadway system relocation (UPRR
15 and I-5) also would be required.

16 ***Accomplishments and Costs***

17 This scenario would considerably contribute to both primary planning
18 objectives and also support each of the secondary planning objectives.
19 Increasing the full pool storage at Shasta Reservoir by 3.9 MAF by raising
20 Shasta Dam 102.5 feet would increase the estimated average annual and critical
21 dry period yield to the CVP by an estimated 214,000 and 425,000 acre-feet,
22 respectively (see Table 3-5). It could help increase anadromous fish survival by
23 creating a small increased cold-water pool. In addition, it could help reduce
24 flood damages along the upper Sacramento River, and increase hydropower
25 generation. It would result in a considerable increase in potential reservoir area
26 recreation opportunities. However, it would have major impacts on the
27 McCloud River and issues relating to the State special designation of that
28 waterway.

29 Because of the considerable increase in storage in Shasta Reservoir for this
30 scenario, and resulting influence on residual available water resources in the
31 upper watershed, planning for other potential water resources projects would be
32 likely influenced measurably. Also, because this scenario requires most of the
33 infrastructure within the reservoir area to be relocated, considerable disruption
34 would occur to local and interstate roadway and railroad transportation,
35 recreation, and related facilities in the Shasta Lake region.

36 As shown in Table 3-4 and Figure 3-3, the estimated first cost (2003 price
37 levels) for this scenario is about \$3.9 billion with an estimated average annual
38 cost of about \$283 million. The estimated unit cost for the new storage space in
39 Shasta Lake would be about \$990 per acre-foot. The resulting unit cost for the
40 average annual and drought year water supply yield would be about \$1,320 and
41 \$670 per acre-foot, respectively (Table 3-5).

1 **High-Level Raise – 202.5 Feet**

2 Major components and accomplishments and costs for the High-Level Raise
3 (202.5 feet) are described in this section.

4 ***Major Components***

5 The High-Level Raise scenario consists of a structural dam raise of 202.5 feet to
6 a new crest at elevation 1,280 (see Table 3-1). The new top of joint-use storage
7 space would be at elevation 1,271.5. This would allow storage of an additional
8 204.5 feet of water in the reservoir. The total capacity of this new reservoir
9 would be 13.89 MAF, an increase of 9.34 MAF above the existing available
10 storage. This dam raise represents the highest practical raise of Shasta Dam.
11 Enlargements beyond this point would begin to experience considerable
12 geological foundation problems. At least one upstream PG&E dam and
13 powerhouse would be relocated with the high level raise – Pit 7 Dam and
14 powerhouse on the upper Pit River. At full pool storage, the reservoir would
15 cover about 60,800 acres, which is an increase of about 31,200 acres over
16 existing conditions (105 percent). Figure 3-5 shows the aerial extent of the
17 High-Level Raise scenario in relationship to other dam raise scenarios being
18 considered.

19 The existing concrete gravity dam section would be raised using a mass
20 concrete overlay on the existing dam crest and downstream face. The upstream
21 face within the curved nonoverflow sections would extend vertically to the new
22 dam crest at elevation 1,280, and the downstream face would have a 0.7:1 slope
23 to the downstream toe. The dam crest would be completed with a crest
24 cantilever for the roadway surface, sidewalks, and parapet walls. Existing
25 elevator shafts would be extended to the new dam crest, and new elevator
26 towers would be provided. The spillway section would require a thicker section
27 to accommodate the gated spillway crest.

28 The new dam crest would include a crest roadway and spillway bridge,
29 passenger and freight elevators, and three gantry cranes. This option would
30 require constructing four saddle dikes to close off the gaps between mountain
31 peaks in the upper watershed. A new powerplant and associated switchyard
32 facilities would be included on the left abutment. The existing powerplant
33 would continue to be operated within its operation range. The existing
34 penstocks on the right abutment would be upgraded.

35 The expanded full pool area would require nearly 630 structures to be removed
36 or relocated. As with the Intermediate-Level Raise scenario, this scenario would
37 require replacement of major infrastructure associated with Shasta Dam and
38 Reservoir.

39 Considerable impacts would occur to historical and cultural resources in the
40 Shasta Lake area. Major impacts would occur to reservoir area and tributary
41 stream ecosystem resources. This scenario would have major and likely

1 irreversible impacts to the McCloud River and issues relating to the State
2 special designation of that waterway.

3 ***Accomplishments and Costs***

4 This High-Level Raise scenario would contribute considerably to both primary
5 planning objectives and support each of the secondary planning objectives.
6 Increasing the full pool storage at Shasta Reservoir by 9.1 MAF by raising
7 Shasta Dam 202.5 feet would increase the estimated average annual and critical
8 dry period yield to the CVP by an estimated 330,000 and over 700,000 acre-
9 feet, respectively (see Table 3-5). It would considerably increase anadromous
10 fish survival by creating a very large increased cold-water pool. In addition,
11 because of the considerable increase in total space in Shasta Reservoir capable
12 of capturing considerably more peak flood flows, this scenario could help
13 resolve many existing flood problems along the upper Sacramento River. It
14 would result in major increases in hydropower generation. It also would result
15 in a substantial increase in water-oriented recreation in Shasta Lake by more
16 than doubling the lake surface area at full pool elevation.

17 Because of the considerable increase in storage in Shasta Reservoir for this
18 scenario, and resulting influence on residual available water runoff from the
19 upper Sacramento River watershed, planning for other potential water resources
20 projects in the Central Valley very likely would be influenced measurably.
21 Also, because the scenario would require most of the infrastructure within the
22 reservoir area to be relocated, considerable disruption would occur to local and
23 interstate roadway and railroad transportation, recreation, and related actions in
24 the Shasta Lake region.

25 The estimated first cost for this scenario (2003 price levels) is about \$5.2 billion
26 with an estimated average annual cost of about \$383 million (see Table 3-4).
27 The estimated unit cost for new storage space in Shasta Lake would be about
28 \$560 per acre-foot (Table 3-5). The resulting unit cost for the average annual
29 and drought year water supply yield would be about \$1,160 and \$550 per acre-
30 foot, respectively (Table 3-5).

31 **Initial Screening**

32 The five dam raise scenarios were compared to identify the scenarios that
33 should be considered in more detail and included in concept plans. Table 3-6 is
34 a summary comparison and screening of each scenario. As shown in the table,
35 three Shasta Dam enlargement scenarios were identified for development into
36 concept plans: the Low-Level Raise – 6.5-foot scenario, Expanded Low-Level
37 Raise – 18.5-Foot scenario, and High-Level Raise – 202.5-foot scenario. The
38 Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30-foot, Intermediate-Raise, and all other Shasta
39 Dam and Reservoir enlargement scenarios were eliminated from further
40 consideration. Following is a summary of each scenario.

Table 3-6. Summary Comparison of Shasta Dam Raise Scenarios (2003 Analysis)

| Description | Low-Level Raise (6.5 feet) | Expanded Low-Level Raise (18.5 feet) | Expanded Low-Level Raise (30 feet) | Intermediate-Level Raise (102.5 feet) | High-Level Raise (202.5 feet) |
|--|---|--|---|---|---|
| Major Features | | | | | |
| Dam Crest Raise (feet) | 6.5 | 18.5 | 30 | 102.5 | 202.5 |
| Full Pool Raise (feet) | 8.5 | 20.5 | 32 | 104.5 | 204.5 |
| Capacity Increase (million AF) | 0.26 | 0.63 | 1.02 | 3.92 | 9.34 |
| Surface Area Increase (%) | 4 | 8 | 14 | 49 | 105 |
| Water Reliability Accomplishments | | | | | |
| Drought Year Yield (AF/year) | 72 | 125 | 185 | 425 | 703 |
| CVP Yield Replacement (%) ¹ | 13 | 20 | 31 | 77 | 100 |
| Cost (2003 Price Levels) | | | | | |
| First Cost (\$ millions) | 282 | 408 | 1,250 | 3,890 | 5,250 |
| Annual Cost (\$ millions) | 19 | 28 | 89 | 283 | 383 |
| Unit Cost (\$/AF) ² | 270 | 225 | 480 | 670 | 550 |
| Major Advantages | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Low unit cost. • No major relocations. • Consistent with 2000 CALFED ROD. • Can contribute to both primary planning objectives. • Potential to provide about 5 and 14 percent of projected 2020 drought and average year shortages, respectively, in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins. • Low impacts in reservoir rim area. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Low unit cost. • No major relocations. • Consistent with goals of 2000 CALFED ROD. • Can contribute to both primary planning objectives. • Potential to provide up to about 7 and 20 percent of projected 2020 drought and average year shortages, respectively, in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can contribute to both primary planning objectives. • Potential to provide up to about 11 and 31 percent of projected 2020 drought and average year shortages, respectively, in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can contribute to both primary planning objectives. • Can contribute considerably to increased recreation, hydropower, and flood control secondary objectives. • Potential to provide about 27 and 77 percent of projected 2020 drought and average year shortages, respectively, in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Can considerably contribute to both primary planning objectives. • Can contribute considerably to increased recreation, hydropower, and flood control secondary objectives. • Potential to provide about 45 and 100 percent of projected 2020 drought and average year shortages, respectively, in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River basins. • Likely lowest-cost project capable of resolving current and future water supply shortages. |

Table 3-6. Summary Comparison of Shasta Dam Raise Scenarios (2003 Analysis) (contd.)

| Description | Low-Level Raise (6.5 feet) | Expanded Low-Level Raise (18.5 feet) | Expanded Low-Level Raise (30 feet) | Intermediate-Level Raise (102.5 feet) | High-Level Raise (202.5 feet) |
|----------------------------|--|---|---|---|--|
| Major Disadvantages | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Relatively low potential to meet primary objectives. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Marginal potential to meet primary objectives. • Moderate reservoir rim impacts. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Very high unit cost. • Requires major reservoir area relocations. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High unit water cost. • Requires major reservoir area relocations. • High reservoir area impacts. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • High unit water cost. • Requires major reservoir area relocations. • Very high reservoir area impacts. |
| Status | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Retained for further development – low unit water cost. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Retained for further development – considerable accomplishments for planning objectives and low unit water cost. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Deleted from further consideration – major relocations and high unit water cost. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Deleted from further consideration – major reservoir impacts and high unit water cost. | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Retained for further consideration – high potential to meet current and future water shortages. |

Notes:

¹ Percent replacement of CVPIA water reallocation.

² Unit cost for drought year yield.

Key:

AF = acre-feet

CVP = Central Valley Project

ROD = Record of Decision

- 1 • **Low-Level Raise – 6.5 Feet** – On the basis of an estimated unit cost
2 per an increase in drought year yield of \$270 per acre-foot, this
3 scenario would be one of the most efficient of the five considered.
4 Primarily due to (1) the relatively low cost for additional dry period
5 yield, (2) high reliability of accomplishing its identified benefits, (3)
6 low overall impact to ecosystem and related resources, (4) ability to
7 combine with other measures, and (5) consistency with goals in the
8 2000 CALFED ROD, this scenario was retained for more detailed
9 analysis as part of the concept plans.
- 10 • **Expanded Low-Level Raise – 18.5 Feet** – On the basis of an
11 estimated unit cost per increase in drought year yield as low as \$225
12 per acre-foot, this scenario also would be one of the most efficient of
13 the five considered. This option was retained for more detailed
14 analysis, primarily due to (1) the potential for additional dry period
15 yield and high potential to influence average year water supply
16 reliability, (2) low implementation cost and water supply reliability
17 cost, (3) relatively low overall impact to ecosystem and related
18 resources, and (4) consistency with the goals of the 2000 CALFED
19 ROD.
- 20 • **Expanded Low-Level Raise – 30 Feet** – On the basis of an estimated
21 high unit cost per new system yield, this scenario would result in
22 relatively low economic efficiency compared with the 6.5-foot and
23 18.5-foot scenarios. Primarily due to considerably higher
24 implementation costs relative to accomplishments, this scenario was
25 deleted from further consideration.
- 26 • **Intermediate-Level Raise – 102.5 Feet** – On the basis of an estimated
27 high unit cost per new system yield, this scenario also would result in
28 low economic efficiency compared with the other dam raise scenarios.
29 Primarily due to considerably higher implementation costs and unit
30 costs for water supply reliability relative to overall accomplishments,
31 this scenario was deleted from further consideration.
- 32 • **High-Level Raise – 202.5 Feet** – On the basis of an estimated high
33 unit cost per new system yield, this scenario would result in relatively
34 low economic efficiency. However, no other known single surface
35 water storage project or combination of surface water projects in the
36 Central Valley of California is as capable of considerably addressing
37 the projected future water shortages with comparable unit water costs
38 as the High-Level Raise scenario. This scenario could provide nearly
39 half the total expected 2020 water shortages of the CVP and SWP.
40 Also, it could almost completely fulfill the water supply replacement
41 objectives of the CVPIA. It would, however, result in major resources
42 impacts in the reservoir area. Primarily because unit costs for new
43 water storage and for average annual yield reliability would be highly

1 competitive at the magnitude of potential developed supplies compared
2 to other surface water storage projects considered by CALFED, this
3 scenario was carried forward for inclusion in a concept plan.

4

1
2

This page left blank intentionally.

Chapter 4

Concept Plans

During the Initial Alternatives Phase, a set of plans that were conceptual in scope (concept plans) was formulated from the retained management measures presented in Chapter 2. Because there is a vast array of potential measure combinations and sizes, the strategy was not to develop an exhaustive list of concept plans or to optimize outputs. Rather, the purpose of this phase of the formulation process was to (1) explore an array of different strategies to address the primary planning objectives, constraints, considerations, and criteria, and (2) identify concepts that warranted further development in the comprehensive plans phase.

The formulation strategy was to develop an array of concept plans representative of the range of potential actions to address objectives of the SLWRI. First, two sets of plans were developed that focused on either anadromous fish survival (AFS) or water supply reliability (WSR) as the single primary planning objective. Three AFS plans and four WSR plans were developed. Although the AFS and WSR plans focused on single planning objectives, each generally contributes to both primary planning objectives. In the three AFS concept plans, for example, emphasis was placed on the combinations of measures that could best address the fish survival goals while considering incidental benefits to WSR, if possible. Second, five concept plans were developed that included measures to address both primary and, to a lesser degree, secondary planning objectives. These are termed combined objective (CO) plans.

This chapter is organized into three sections, beginning with a discussion of the measures contained in the concept plans, including a discussion of features that are common to some or all of the plans. The AFS, WSR, and CO concept plans then are discussed individually. Last, the concept plans are compared to determine the relative scope of comprehensive alternative plans.

Overview of Concept Plan Features

Table 4-1 summarizes how the retained measures were combined to form concept plans that focus on anadromous fish, water supply reliability, or COs. The concept plans and their unique features are discussed individually in the remaining sections of this chapter. Calculated values referenced in this chapter are from the June 2004 *Initial Alternatives Information Report* (Reclamation 2004a). Raises of 6.5 feet and 18.5 feet were evaluated based on enlarged storage capacities of 290,000 acre-feet and 636,000 acre-feet, respectively.

1 Subsequent evaluations determined that the increases in capacity for these raises
2 are 256,000 acre-feet and 634,000 acre-feet, respectively. The current
3 comprehensive plans discussed in Chapter 5 reflect these changes.

4 **Table 4-1. Summary of Concept Plan Features**

| Concept Plan | Features | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--------------|-----------|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|---|----------------------|------------|---------------------------|--|-------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------|--|
| | Dam Raise | Primary Planning Objective Focus | | | | | | Secondary Planning Objectives Addressed ⁴ | | | | |
| | | Water Supply Reliability ² | | Anadromous Fish Survival | | | | Environmental Restoration | | Flood Control and Hydropower | | |
| | | Raise Shasta Dam ¹ (feet) | Increase Conservation Storage | Perform Conjunctive Water Management ³ | Reoperate Shasta Dam | Modify TCD | Replenish Spawning Gravel | Enlarge Shasta Lake Cold-Water Pool | Increase Minimum Flows ³ | Restore Shoreline Aquatic Habitat | Restore Tributary Aquatic Habitat | Restore Riparian Habitat |
| AFS-1 | 6.5 | * | | Changes to water supply operations and modification of the TCD would likely be included, to some extent, in any alternative that includes raising Shasta Dam. | | X | | | | | | Changes to flood control operations at Shasta Dam, Public Safety, ³ and hydropower facilities would likely be part of any alternative that includes physically modifying Shasta Dam; the degree and details of these changes will be included in feasibility level alternative plans. |
| AFS-2 | 6.5 | * | | | | * | X | | | | | |
| AFS-3 | 6.5 | * | | | X | * | X | | | | | |
| WSR-1 | 6.5 | X | | | | * | | | | | | |
| WSR-2 | 18.5 | X | | | | * | | | | | | |
| WSR-3 | 202.5 | X | | | | * | | | | | | |
| WSR-4 | 18.5 | X | X | | | * | | | | | | |
| CO-1 | 6.5 | X | | | | X | X | | | | | |
| CO-2 | 18.5 | X | | | | X | X | | | | | |
| CO-3 | 18.5 | X | | | | X | X | X | | | | |
| CO-4 | 6.5 | X | X | | | X | X | | X | X | X | |
| CO-5 | 18.5 | X | X | | | X | X | | X | X | X | |

Notes:

¹ Raising Shasta Dam provides both water supply and temperature benefits, regardless of how the additional storage is exercised. While the AFS measures focus on use of the additional space for anadromous fish survival, they also provide significant water supply benefits. Similarly, the WSR measures focus on water supply reliability but the reservoir enlargements also provide coincidental benefits to anadromous fish.

² All concept plans will include attention to water demand reduction.

³ These measures were used for evaluation because they were retained at the time of plan formulation. However, they have since been removed from consideration.

⁴ Water quality was not used as an evaluation feature because it was not retained as a secondary objective at the time concept plans were formulated.

Key:

* Coincidental benefit, although not a primary focus of the concept plan

AFS= anadromous fish survival

CO = combined objectives

TCD = temperature control device

WSR = water supply reliability

X = Primary focus of concept plan

5

1 Many of the concept plans share common physical features related to raising
 2 Shasta Dam. These include the physical or construction features of dam
 3 enlargement, and reservoir area relocations and other impacts.

4 Each of the concept plans includes enlarging Shasta Dam and Reservoir by 6.5
 5 feet, 18.5 feet, or 202.5 feet. Table 4-2 summarizes various changes in Shasta
 6 Dam and Lake for the three dam raises.

7 **Table 4-2. Shasta Dam and Lake Changes – Dam Raise Scenarios**

| Item | Existing | 6.5-Foot Raise | 18.5-Foot Raise | 202.5-Foot Raise |
|---|------------------|------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| Shasta Dam | | | | |
| Type | Concrete Gravity | Concrete Gravity | Concrete Gravity | Concrete Gravity |
| Construction Means | - | Block Raise (crest) | Block Raise (crest) | Mass Raise (overlay) |
| Crest Elevation ⁴ | 1,077.5 | 1,084.0 | 1,096.0 | 1,280.0 |
| Dam Crest Length ⁴ | 3,460 | 3,660 | 3,770 | 4,930 |
| Dam Crest Width ⁴ | 30 | 30 | 30 | 30 |
| Shasta Lake | | | | |
| Elevation Change | | | | |
| Increase in Full Pool ⁴ | - | 8.5 | 20.5 | 204.5 |
| Elevation of Full Pool ⁴ | 1,067.0 | 1,075.5 | 1,087.5 | 1,271.5 |
| Elevation Minimum Operating Pool ⁴ | 840 | 840 | 840 | 840 |
| Capacity (1,000 acre-feet) | | | | |
| Capacity Increase | - | 290 ¹ | 636 ¹ | 9,338 |
| Total at Full Pool ² | 4,552 | 4,842 ¹ | 5,188 | 13,890 |
| Minimum Operating Pool | 590 | 590 / 880 ³ | 590 | 590 |
| Surface Area Increase (acres) | - | 1,100 | 2,500 | 31,200 |

Notes:

¹ Subsequent evaluations refined the storage capacity increase with a 6.5-foot raise and with an 18.5-foot raise to 256,000 acre-feet and 634,000 acre-feet, respectively. Total capacity for an 18.5-foot raise has been refined to 5,190,000 acre-feet.

² Increase in full pool elevation is greater than the magnitude of the dam raise, largely due to the increased efficiency of the steel radial spillway gates that would replace the existing drum gates.

³ Concept Plan AFS-1 includes increasing the minimum operating pool to 880,000 acre-feet. All other plans assume an existing minimum operating pool of 590,000 acre-feet.

⁴ All elevations are in feet above mean sea level.

8

1 **Plans Focused on Anadromous Fish Survival**

2 Three concept plans were formulated from the management measures retained
3 to address the primary planning objective of anadromous fish survival. The
4 main focus of these concept plans is on anadromous fish survival in the upper
5 Sacramento River, but each contributes somewhat to water supply reliability.
6 While numerous possible combinations of the type and size of the measures
7 make up these concept plans, those shown in Table 4-1 and described below are
8 believed to be reasonably representative of the range of potential actions.

9 Each of the three AFS concept plans includes raising Shasta Dam 6.5 feet,
10 which would raise the full pool level by 8.5 feet and enlarge the reservoir by
11 290,000 acre-feet. Although larger dam raises could produce greater benefits to
12 fisheries, the goal at this stage in plan formulation was to provide a common
13 baseline from which the relative performance of the three AFS concept plans
14 could be compared. The primary difference between the three AFS concept
15 plans is in how the additional storage gained by the raise would be used to
16 benefit anadromous fish. AFS-1 focuses the additional storage on regulating
17 water temperature in the upper Sacramento River, while AFS-2 and AFS-3
18 focus the additional storage on regulating flows in the upper Sacramento River.
19 AFS-3 also adds an additional increment, fish habitat restoration on the upper
20 Sacramento River.

21 **AFS-1– Increase Cold-Water Assets with Shasta Operating Pool Raise (6.5 Feet)**

22 AFS-1 focuses on the primary planning objective of anadromous fish survival
23 by raising Shasta Dam 6.5 feet to enlarge the pool of cold water in Shasta Lake.
24 Major plan components include (1) raising Shasta Dam by 6.5 feet for the
25 primary purpose of enlarging the cold-water pool and regulating water
26 temperature in the upper Sacramento River and (2) increasing the size of the
27 minimum operating pool to 880,000 acre-feet.

28 Both of the major plan components focus on increasing the volume of cold
29 water in Shasta Lake available for regulating water temperature on the upper
30 Sacramento River. AFS-1 would increase the capacity of the reservoir by
31 290,000 acre-feet to a total of 4.84 MAF. The existing TCD would be extended
32 and potentially modified. In addition, the minimum end-of-October carryover
33 storage target would be increased from 1.9 MAF to about 2.2 MAF, increasing
34 the minimum operating pool to 880,000 acre-feet. This would allow additional
35 cold water to be stored for use the following year. No changes would be made
36 to the existing seasonal temperature targets for anadromous fish on the upper
37 Sacramento River, but the ability to meet these targets would be improved.

38 For this plan, major relocations include modifying the Pit River Bridge,
39 replacing 7 other bridges, relocating 45 structures, and inundating numerous
40 small segments of existing paved and nonpaved roads. About 20 buildings

1 associated with marinas or resorts would be affected directly, and about 25
2 other buildings associated with ancillary facilities could be affected indirectly
3 because of their proximity to the new water surface at full pool.

4 Major benefits of AFS-1 include the following:

- 5 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – Water temperature is one of the most
6 important factors in achieving recovery goals for anadromous fish in
7 the Sacramento River. AFS-1 would increase the ability of Shasta Dam
8 to make cold-water releases and regulate water temperature in the
9 upper Sacramento River, primarily in dry and critical years. This would
10 be accomplished by raising Shasta Dam by 6.5 feet, thus increasing the
11 depth of the cold-water pool in Shasta Reservoir and resulting in an
12 increase in seasonal cold-water volume below the thermocline (layer of
13 greatest water temperature and density change). Cold water released
14 from Shasta Dam significantly influences water temperature conditions
15 in the Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and the RBDD, and
16 can have an extended influence on river temperatures farther
17 downstream. Hence, the most significant benefits to anadromous fish
18 would occur upstream from Red Bluff, but some degree of benefit
19 could be realized as far downstream as the Delta.

20 Relationships between anadromous fish mortality and environmental
21 conditions (including water temperature) are very complex. Recent
22 significant strides have been made, however, to try and assess these
23 relationships and resulting influences on increases or decreases in fish
24 populations. For this study, the SALMOD computer model was used
25 to simulate the dynamics of freshwater salmonid populations in the
26 upper Sacramento River. The model's premise is that egg and fish
27 mortality are directly related to spatially and temporally variable micro-
28 and macrohabitat limitations, which themselves are related to the
29 timing and amount of streamflow and other meteorological variables.
30 Information on this model and its application to the SLWRI is
31 presented in the Modeling Appendix. On the basis of this model
32 assessment, it is estimated that AFS-1 could significantly contribute to
33 an average annual increase (reduction in mortality) of salmon. For
34 higher dam raise scenarios with corresponding increases in the
35 minimum operating pool, the benefit to salmon would be proportionally
36 greater.

- 37 • **Water Supply Reliability** – AFS-1 would only incidentally contribute
38 to increasing the water supply reliability of the CVP and SWP systems.
- 39 • **Other Benefits** – Although the focus of this concept plan was on
40 benefiting anadromous fish in the upper Sacramento River by
41 increasing the cold-water pool in Shasta Lake, minor secondary
42 benefits would occur. The higher water surface in the reservoir would

1 result in a net increase in power generation. The ability to manage
2 floods would not increase significantly. AFS-1 does not include any
3 specific measures to address the secondary planning objective of
4 environmental restoration. Water-oriented recreation at Shasta Lake,
5 and the services it supports, are very important to the economic health
6 and well-being of the community of Redding and surrounding area.
7 AFS-1 would provide a small benefit to the water-oriented recreation
8 experience at Shasta Lake due to the increase in lake surface area. The
9 maximum surface area of the lake would increase by about 1,100 acres
10 (3 percent), from 29,600 to about 30,700 acres.

11 The most significant benefit of AFS-1 is the significant increase in
12 anadromous fish population. The plan would not provide significant
13 benefits to water supply reliability, although it would provide incidental
14 increases in hydropower. Consequently, all initial costs for this plan
15 would be allocated to anadromous fish survival.

16 **AFS-2 – Increase Minimum Anadromous Fish Flow with Shasta Enlargement** 17 **(6.5 Feet)**

18 AFS-2 focuses on the primary planning objective of anadromous fish survival
19 by increasing minimum seasonal flows in the upper Sacramento River from the
20 current 3,250 cfs to about 4,200 cfs. The primary component of AFS-2 includes
21 raising Shasta Dam by 6.5 feet for the primary purpose of enlarging the volume
22 of water available to meet minimum flows for winter-run salmon on the upper
23 Sacramento River.

24 Additional storage created by raising the dam would be focused on increasing
25 the minimum flow target for winter-run Chinook salmon on the upper
26 Sacramento River, consistent with the goals of the January 2001 *Final*
27 *Restoration Plan* for the Anadromous Fish Restoration Program. Similar to
28 AFS-1, this concept plan would increase the capacity of the reservoir by
29 290,000 acre-feet to a total of 4.84 MAF, and extend the existing TCD to
30 achieve efficient use of the expanded reservoir. AFS-2 differs from AFS-1 in
31 that the additional storage would be used to increase minimum flows, rather
32 than temperature, and no changes would be made to the carryover target volume
33 or minimum operating pool.

34 For this concept plan, the additional storage would allow the minimum flow
35 target in the upper Sacramento River to be increased from 3,250 cfs to 4,200
36 cfs, without adversely impacting water supply deliveries to the CVP. Although
37 4,200 cfs does not represent flows that produce optimal spawning conditions in
38 the river (closer to 5,000 cfs), it is believed to represent a possible balance
39 between the various beneficial uses of the reservoir.

40

1 The benefits of AFS-2 are as follows:

- 2 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – In addition to temperature, river flow is
3 an important factor influencing anadromous fish survival. Flows in the
4 upper Sacramento River are highly influenced by releases from Shasta
5 Dam, particularly during dry years. Higher instream flows would
6 provide access to additional spawning and rearing habitat sites, extend
7 the area of suitable habitat farther downstream, and generally improve
8 aquatic and riparian habitat conditions along the river. Further, over 80
9 percent of the total (combined) population of spring-run, late-fall-run,
10 and endangered winter-run Chinook salmon spawn between Keswick
11 Dam and Battle Creek. AFS-2 would use the additional 290,000 acre-
12 feet of storage in Shasta to increase minimum flows in this reach of the
13 upper Sacramento River between October 1 and April 30. Benefits
14 would occur primarily during drier years, when flows often fall to the
15 current minimum flow of 3,250 cfs. For example, the average daily
16 outflow from Keswick fell below 4,200 cfs on about 175 days between
17 1998 and 2004 (period of current operating rules). It should be noted
18 that this figure represents flows averaged over 24-hour periods, and
19 does not reflect hourly fluctuations or every day that flows fell below
20 4,200 cfs (or the duration of these occurrences).

21 A preliminary assessment was conducted, using an existing hydraulic
22 model of the upper Sacramento River, to estimate the increase in
23 available spawning habitat that would occur if flows increased from
24 3,250 cfs to 4,200 cfs. Although the preliminary assessment has
25 limitations, it provides a means for comparing the relative performance
26 of the concept plans. On the basis of this assessment, it is estimated
27 that AFS-2 could decrease the amount of spawning area between
28 Keswick and Battle Creek that normally becomes dewatered during low
29 flow years by about 170 acres.

30 Although the focus of AFS-2 is on increasing minimum flows, raising
31 Shasta Dam also increases the available cold-water pool and allows
32 operators greater flexibility in regulating water temperature in the upper
33 Sacramento River. Based on preliminary analyses, improved
34 temperature conditions under AFS-2 would result in an estimated
35 average annual increase of the salmon population.

- 36 • **Water Supply Reliability** – As mentioned previously, using the
37 additional storage to increase minimum flows would result in little or
38 no increase in water supply reliability to the CVP. However, AFS-2
39 would incidentally contribute to increasing average and dry period
40 water supply reliability to the SWP system. This increase corresponds
41 to about 20,000 acre-feet during critical years.

- 1 • **Other Benefits** – A preliminary assessment indicated that the higher
2 water surface in the reservoir would result in a net increase in power
3 generation. Flood control operations at Shasta Dam and Reservoir
4 would continue as under existing conditions. AFS-2 does not include
5 any specific measures to address the secondary planning objective of
6 environmental restoration. However, increasing minimum flows would
7 provide incidental benefits to riparian habitat along the upper
8 Sacramento River. AFS-2 would provide a small benefit to the water-
9 oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake due to the increase in
10 lake surface area, similar to that described for AFS-1. The maximum
11 surface area of the lake would increase by about 1,100 acres (3
12 percent), from 29,600 to about 30,700 acres.

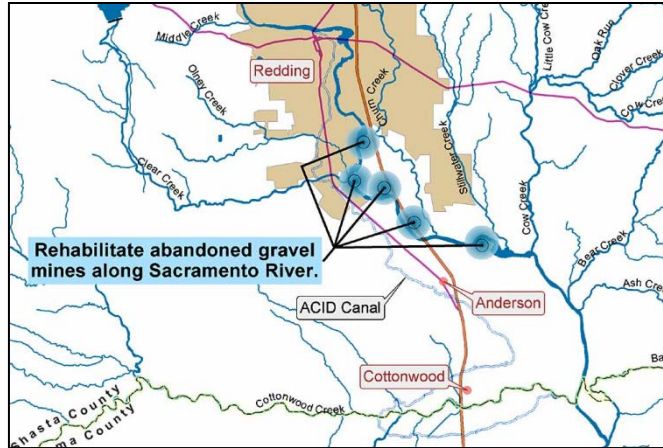
13 **AFS-3 – Increase Minimum Anadromous Fish Flow and Restore Aquatic Habitat** 14 **with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 Feet)**

15 AFS-3 addresses the primary planning objective of anadromous fish survival
16 through a dual focus on (1) instream habitat restoration and (2) increasing
17 minimum seasonal flows on the upper Sacramento River by enlarging Shasta
18 Dam and Reservoir, similar to AFS-2. Major plan components include (1)
19 raising Shasta Dam by 6.5 feet for the primary purpose of enlarging the volume
20 of water available to meet minimum flows for winter-run Chinook salmon on
21 the upper Sacramento River and (2) acquiring, restoring, and reclaiming one or
22 more inactive gravel mining operations along the upper Sacramento River to
23 restore about 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat.

24 These components are focused on increasing the quality and quantity of
25 spawning habitat on the upper Sacramento River. Similar to AFS-2, minimum
26 spring flows for winter-run Chinook salmon would increase from 3,250 cfs to
27 4,200 cfs; the capacity of the reservoir would increase by 290,000 acre-feet to a
28 total of 4.84 MAF; and the existing TCD would be extended to achieve efficient
29 use of the expanded reservoir.

30 AFS-3 differs from AFS-2 in that an additional increment of instream habitat
31 would be provided by gravel mine restoration along the upper Sacramento
32 River. For the purpose of this initial evaluation, suitable areas totaling 150
33 acres would be chosen from one or more abandoned gravel mines (see potential
34 sites in Figure 4-1).

35 Restoration would involve filling deep pits, recontouring the stream channel and
36 floodplain to mimic more natural topography, and reconnecting the reclaimed
37 area to the Sacramento River. Side channels and other features would be
38 created to encourage spawning and rearing, and restored floodplain lands would
39 be revegetated using native riparian plants.



1
2
3
4
Figure 4-1. Potential Locations Along Sacramento River Where Abandoned Gravel Mines Could Be Considered for Restoration

5 The primary benefits of AFS-3 include the following:

- 6
- 7
- 8
- 9
- 10
- 11
- 12
- 13
- 14
- 15
- 16
- 17
- **Anadromous Fish Survival** – As described previously, instream flows and the availability of suitable aquatic habitat in the reach between Keswick Dam and Battle Creek are particularly influential on the survival of anadromous fish. AFS-3 would support the primary planning objective of anadromous fish survival by increasing minimum flows from October 1 through April 30 and restoring 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat at one or more inactive gravel mines on the upper Sacramento River. Together, it is estimated that the minimum flow increase and habitat restoration would add approximately 320 acres (restored gravel mines at 150 acres and increased flows at 170 acres) of potential spawning habitat to the upper Sacramento River between Keswick and Battle Creek.
- 18
- **Water Supply Reliability** – AFS-3 would incidentally contribute to increasing average and dry period water supply reliability to the SWP system. This increase corresponds to about 20,000 acre-feet during critical years.
- 19
- 20
- 21
- **Other Benefits** – The higher water surface elevations in the reservoir would result in a net increase in power generation of about 32 gigawatt-hours (GWh) per year. Flood control operations at Shasta Dam and Reservoir would continue similar to under existing conditions. AFS-3 would provide a small benefit to the water-oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake due to the increase in lake surface area, similar to that of AFS-1 and AFS-2. The maximum surface area of the lake would increase by about 1,100 acres (3 percent), from 29,600 to about 30,700 acres.
- 22
- 23
- 24
- 25
- 26
- 27
- 28
- 29
- 30

1 **Plans Focused on Water Supply Reliability**

2 Four concept plans were formulated from the management measures retained to
3 address the primary planning objective of increasing water supply reliability.
4 Although each WSR concept plan contributes somewhat to both primary
5 planning objectives, these four plans focus on the objective of increased water
6 supply reliability. As with the previous set of plans that focus on anadromous
7 fish survival, numerous potential measure combinations and sizes exist. The
8 magnitude of enlarging Shasta Dam was important when developing the WSR
9 concept plans because storage capacity is the most influential factor in
10 determining benefits to water supply reliability for this study. Hence, three dam
11 raises were considered in the WSR concept plans: 6.5 feet, 18.5 feet, and 202.5
12 feet. The concept plans summarized in Table 4-1 and described below are
13 believed to be reasonably representative of the range of potential actions to
14 address the primary planning objective of water supply reliability.

15 The majority of water supply reliability benefits for all water supply reliability
16 plans consist of increases in south-of-Delta agricultural water deliveries. The
17 remaining benefits are seen in increased water deliveries for south-of-Delta
18 M&I and north-of-Delta agricultural and M&I uses.

19 **WSR-1 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 Feet)**

20 WSR-1 focuses on the primary planning objective of water supply reliability by
21 increasing the volume of water stored in Shasta Lake with a 6.5-foot dam raise.
22 Major components of this concept plan include (1) raising Shasta Dam by 6.5
23 feet for the primary purpose of creating 290,000 acre-feet of additional storage
24 available for water supply and (2) revising flood control operations to benefit
25 water supply reliability by managing floods more efficiently.

26 Each of these components focuses on increasing water supply reliability to the
27 CVP and SWP. This plan is similar to AFS-1, but the additional storage would
28 be operated for water supply reliability as under existing operational guidelines.
29 Similar to AFS-1, this concept plan would increase the capacity of the reservoir
30 by 290,000 acre-feet to a total of 4.84 MAF and extend the existing TCD for
31 efficient use of the expanded cold-water pool.

32 In addition, WSR-1 includes revisions to the operational rules for flood control
33 such that the facility could potentially be managed more efficiently for flood
34 control, thereby freeing some additional seasonal storage space for water
35 supply. This would be accomplished using advanced weather forecasting tools.
36 A primary constraint of this component of WSR-1 is that the existing level of
37 flood protection provided by Shasta Dam would not be adversely impacted.

38

1 Major benefits of WSR-1 include the following:

- 2 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – Although the focus of WSR-1 is on
3 improving water supply reliability, raising Shasta Dam also would
4 increase the cold-water pool and benefit seasonal water temperatures
5 along the upper Sacramento River. It is estimated that improved water
6 temperature conditions could result in an average increase in the
7 salmon population of about half that for AFS-1.
- 8 • **Water Supply Reliability** – WSR-1 would increase water supply
9 reliability by increasing critical and dry year yield of the CVP and
10 SWP. This would help reduce estimated future shortages by increasing
11 critical and dry period supplies by at least 72,000 acre-feet per year.
12 This increase in reliability also could help reduce supplies redirected by
13 the CVPIA during drought years by about 13 percent.
- 14 • **Other Benefits** – The higher water surface elevation in the reservoir
15 would result in a net increase in power generation. Flood control
16 operations at Shasta Dam and Reservoir would continue similar to
17 under existing conditions. WSR-1 does not include any specific
18 measures to address the secondary planning objective of environmental
19 restoration. Similar to the AFS plans, WSR-1 would provide a small
20 benefit to the water-oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake due
21 to the increase in lake surface area. The maximum surface area of the
22 lake would increase by about 1,100 acres (3 percent), from 29,600 to
23 about 30,700 acres.

24 **WSR-2 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 Feet)**

25 WSR-2 focuses on the primary planning objective of water supply reliability by
26 raising Shasta Dam 18.5 feet. The major components of this plan include (1)
27 raising Shasta Dam by 18.5 feet for the primary purpose of creating 634,000
28 acre-feet of additional storage available for water supply and (2) revising flood
29 control operations to benefit water supply reliability by managing floods more
30 efficiently.

31 Each of these components focuses on increasing water supply reliability to the
32 CVP and SWP. Although higher dam raises are technically and physically
33 feasible, 18.5 feet is the largest practical dam raise that does not require
34 relocating the Pit River Bridge. The 18.5-foot raise would increase the capacity
35 of the reservoir by 634,000 acre-feet to a total of 5.19 MAF (see Table 4-2).
36 Operations for the added storage in the reservoir would be similar to existing
37 operations. The existing TCD would be extended for efficient use of the
38 expanded cold-water pool. As described for WSR-1, this concept plan would
39 include modifying flood control operation rules to manage the reservoir more
40 efficiently for flood control, thereby freeing some additional seasonal storage
41 space for water supply.

1 The plan includes constructing a protection dike for I-5 at Lakeshore Drive and
2 the UPRR at Bridge Bay. To offset potential impacts to lake area infrastructure,
3 the plan would include modifications to the Pit River Bridge, replacement of 7
4 other bridges, acquisition and/or relocation of 130 structures, and relocation of
5 small segments of existing paved and nonpaved roads. In addition, two power
6 transmission lines, several water storage tanks, and three USFS fire stations and
7 ancillary facilities also would be relocated. Portions of Lakeshore Drive,
8 Fenders Ferry Road, Gilman Road, and Silverthorn Road would be relocated.
9 To offset potential impacts to seasonal boat traffic under the Pit River Bridge,
10 the plan would need to include features such as boat scheduling assistance
11 and/or financial compensation.

12 The primary benefits of WSR-2 include the following:

- 13 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – Although the focus of WSR-2 is on
14 improving water supply reliability, raising Shasta Dam by 18.5 feet
15 would increase the cold-water pool and benefit seasonal water
16 temperatures along the upper Sacramento River. It is estimated that
17 improved water temperature conditions could result in an average
18 increase in the salmon population of about 30 percent over AFS-1.
- 19 • **Water Supply Reliability** – WSR-2 would increase water supply
20 reliability by increasing the critical and dry year yield of the CVP and
21 SWP. This would help reduce estimated future shortages by increasing
22 critical and dry period supplies by at least 125,000 acre-feet per year.
23 This increase in reliability could also help reduce CVPIA-redireceted
24 supplies during drought years by about 20 percent.
- 25 • **Other Benefits** – The higher water surface elevation in the reservoir
26 would result in a net increase in power generation of about 44 GWh per
27 year. Flood control operations at Shasta Dam and Reservoir would
28 continue similar to under existing conditions. WSR-2 does not include
29 any specific measures to address the secondary planning objective of
30 environmental restoration. The water-oriented recreation experience at
31 Shasta Lake would generally increase due to the increase in lake
32 surface area. The maximum surface area of the lake would increase by
33 about 2,500 acres (8 percent), from 29,600 to about 32,100 acres.

34 **WSR-3 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (High Level)**

35 WSR-3 focuses on the primary planning objective of water supply reliability by
36 raising Shasta Dam by 202.5 feet. Major components of this plan include (1)
37 raising Shasta Dam by about 202.5 feet for the primary purpose of creating 9.3
38 MAF of additional storage available for water supply and (2) major
39 modifications to or replacing dam appurtenances, including hydropower
40 facilities and the TCD.

1 Raising Shasta Dam by about 202.5 feet is considered to be the largest
2 technically feasible raise without completely reconstructing the existing dam.
3 The 202.5-foot raise would increase the capacity of the reservoir by 9.3 MAF to
4 a total of 13.9 MAF. The magnitude of this raise would require significant
5 modifications or replacement of most facilities associated with the dam (see
6 Table 4-2). The existing TCD would be replaced, and modifications to
7 hydropower facilities would include replacing gates and structural supports for
8 the penstocks, adding generator units to the powerplant, replacing the
9 switchyard, and modifying Keswick Dam and its powerplant. The additional
10 storage in the reservoir would be operated primarily for water supply, but the
11 magnitude of the raise also would significantly increase the cold-water pool and
12 the ability of dam operators to meet both temperature and minimum flow
13 requirements on the upper Sacramento River.

14 Because of the extensive area impacts associated with WSR-3, the plan would
15 need to include major facilities aimed at offsetting these impacts. At minimum,
16 they would include relocating the Pit River Bridge, replacing 20 other bridges,
17 removing Pit 7 Dam, relocating about 630 structures, and inundating numerous
18 large segments of existing paved and nonpaved roads. About 35 miles of the
19 UPRR, 19 miles of I-5, and numerous associated tunnels, embankments, and
20 other facilities would be relocated. The plan would need to include significant
21 facilities to mitigate for impacts to reservoir area recreation facilities. The plan
22 would include extensive facilities to mitigate impacts to environmental,
23 historical, and other cultural resources around Shasta Lake.

24 The Pit 7 Dam is located at the existing headwater of Shasta Lake (see Figure
25 4-2). The dam is 200 feet high and was constructed for hydropower purposes in
26 the mid-1960s by PG&E. The full pool elevation for WSR-3 would be similar
27 to the existing top of the Pit 7 Dam, inundating all facilities at the dam. Electric
28 generation lost at Pit 7 would be replaced from the facilities added at the
29 enlarged Shasta Dam.



30 **Figure 4-2. Pit 7 Dam, Located on the Pit River**
31 **Upstream from Shasta Lake, is 200 Feet High**
32

1 Major benefits of WSR-3 include the following:

- 2 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – Raising Shasta Dam by 202.5 feet
3 would substantially increase the cold-water pool and benefit seasonal
4 water temperatures along the upper Sacramento River. Preliminary
5 analyses indicate that improved water temperature conditions could
6 result in a major average increase in salmon population. The additional
7 storage also would provide operators with greater flexibility in meeting
8 minimum flow requirements on the upper Sacramento River. Detailed
9 studies are required to more accurately quantify the increase in
10 anadromous fish populations resulting from such a large increase in the
11 capacity of Shasta Dam and Reservoir.
- 12 • **Water Supply Reliability** – WSR-3 would significantly increase water
13 supply reliability for the CVP and SWP systems. This would help
14 reduce estimated future shortages, increasing critical and dry period
15 supplies by over 700,000 acre-feet per year. This increase in reliability
16 would likely offset CVPIA-redirected supplies during drought years.
- 17 • **Other Benefits** – The higher water surface elevation in the reservoir
18 would result in a significant net increase in power generation,
19 amounting to almost 2.3 million GWh per year. Much of this increase
20 would be offset, however, by the loss of generation from the Pit 7 Dam,
21 which would be removed. A potential would also exist to significantly
22 increase the ability to control larger flood events in the Sacramento
23 River near Redding. WSR-3 does not include any specific measures to
24 address the secondary planning objective of environmental restoration.
25 The water-oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake would
26 generally increase because of the increase in lake surface area. The
27 maximum surface area of the lake would increase by about 31,200
28 acres (roughly twice that of existing conditions), from 29,600 to about
29 60,800 acres.

30 **WSR-4 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 Feet)** 31 **and Conjunctive Water Management**

32 WSR-4 focuses on the primary planning objective of water supply reliability by
33 raising Shasta Dam 18.5 feet in combination with conjunctive water
34 management. Major components of this plan include (1) raising Shasta Dam by
35 18.5 feet for the primary purpose of creating 634,000 acre-feet of additional
36 storage available for water supply and (2) implementing a conjunctive water
37 management program.

38 Each of these components focuses on increasing water supply reliability to the
39 CVP and SWP. The 18.5-foot raise would increase the capacity of the reservoir
40 by 636,000 acre-feet to a total of 5.19 MAF (see Table 4-2). Operations for the
41 added storage in the reservoir would be similar to existing operations. The
42 existing TCD would be extended for efficient use of the expanded cold-water

1 pool. As described for WSR-1, this concept plan would include modifying
2 flood control operation rules to manage the reservoir more efficiently for flood
3 control, thereby freeing some additional seasonal storage space for water
4 supply.

5 The conjunctive water management component would consist largely of
6 contract agreements between Reclamation and certain Sacramento River basin
7 water users. It also would include any additional river diversions, increase in
8 current diversion capacity, and/or transmission facilities to facilitate the
9 exchange.

10 Major benefits of WSR-4 include the following:

- 11 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – Raising Shasta Dam by 18.5 feet would
12 increase the cold-water pool and benefit seasonal water temperatures
13 along the upper Sacramento River. It is estimated that improved water
14 temperature conditions could result in an average increase in the
15 salmon population similar to AFS-1.
- 16 • **Water Supply Reliability** – WSR-4 would increase water supply
17 reliability by increasing the critical and dry year yield of the CVP and
18 SWP. The combination of increased storage space in Shasta Reservoir
19 and exchanged surface water for participating Sacramento River water
20 users would result in an increase in water supply reliability of about
21 146,000 acre-feet per year. This increase in reliability could also help
22 reduce CVPIA-redirected supplies during drought years.
- 23 • **Other Benefits**– The higher water surface elevation in the reservoir
24 would result in a net increase in power generation. Flood control
25 operations at Shasta Dam and Reservoir would continue similar to
26 under existing conditions. WSR-4 does not include any specific
27 measures to address the secondary planning objective of environmental
28 restoration. The water-oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake
29 would generally increase because of the increase in lake surface area.
30 The maximum surface area of the lake would increase by about 2,500
31 acres (8 percent), from 29,600 to about 32,100 acres.

32 Plans Focused on Combined Objectives

33 Various concept plans were formulated from the retained management measures
34 to represent a reasonable balance between the two primary planning objectives.
35 Five of the plans are shown in Table 4-1. The CO concept plans shown in the
36 table and described below include measures to actively address the secondary
37 planning objectives, as appropriate. As with previous concept plans, numerous
38 potential sizes and combinations of components are possible. However, for
39 comparison purposes, three CO concept plans described below include raising

1 Shasta Dam by 18.5 feet and two involve raising Shasta Dam by 6.5 feet. It is
2 believed that they are reasonably representative, although not exhaustively, of
3 the range of potential and applicable actions.

4 **CO-1 – Increase Anadromous Fish Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with**
5 **Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet)**

6 CO-1 addresses both primary planning objectives by restoring anadromous fish
7 habitat and raising Shasta Dam by 6.5 feet.

8 CO-1 includes the following major components:

- 9 • Raising Shasta Dam by 6.5 feet for the purposes of expanding the cold-
10 water pool and creating 290,000 acre-feet of additional storage
11 available for water supply.
- 12 • Acquiring, restoring, and reclaiming one or more inactive gravel
13 mining operations along the upper Sacramento River to create about
14 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat.
- 15 • Revising flood control operations to benefit water supply reliability by
16 managing floods more efficiently.

17 CO-1 would use the additional storage created by the 6.5-foot raise to increase
18 water supply reliability, while also improving the ability to meet water
19 temperature objectives for winter-run salmon. The capacity of the reservoir
20 would increase by 290,000 acre-feet to a total of 4.84 MAF, and the existing
21 TCD would be extended to achieve efficient use of the expanded reservoir. This
22 concept also would include revisions to the operational rules for flood control,
23 such that Shasta Dam and Reservoir could be managed more efficiently for
24 water supply reliability (see previous discussion of WSR-1). Suitable areas
25 totaling 150 acres would be chosen for aquatic and floodplain restoration from
26 one or more abandoned gravel mines on the upper Sacramento River (see
27 previous discussion of AFS-3).

28 Benefits of CO-1 are described below:

- 29 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – CO-1 would increase the ability of
30 Shasta Dam to make cold-water releases to regulate water temperature
31 in the upper Sacramento River, primarily in dry and critical years.
32 Preliminary analyses estimate that improved water temperature
33 conditions could result in an average annual increase of 410 salmon.
34 Habitat restoration would add an additional 150 acres of aquatic and
35 floodplain habitat to the Sacramento River between Keswick and Battle
36 Creek, a critical spawning reach.

- 1 • **Water Supply Reliability** – CO-1 would increase average and dry
2 period water supply reliability to the CVP and SWP systems. This
3 increase corresponds to about 72,000 acre-feet during critical years.

- 4 • **Environmental Restoration, Flood Control, and Hydropower** –
5 Higher water surface elevations in the reservoir would result in a small
6 net increase in power generation of about 15 GWh per year.

- 7 • **Other Benefits** – CO-1 would provide a small benefit to the water-
8 oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake due to the increase in
9 lake surface area, similar to that described previously for concepts
10 incorporating a 6.5-foot raise. The maximum surface area of the lake
11 would increase by about 1,060 acres (3 percent), from 29,600 to about
12 30,700 acres.

13 **CO-2 – Increase Anadromous Fish Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with**
14 **Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet)**

15 CO-2 addresses both primary planning objectives by raising Shasta Dam by
16 18.5 feet and restoration of anadromous fish habitat.

17 CO-2 includes the following major components:

- 18 • Raising Shasta Dam by 18.5 feet for the purposes of expanding the
19 cold-water pool and creating 636,000 acre-feet of additional storage
20 available for water supply.

- 21 • Acquiring, restoring, and reclaiming one or more inactive gravel
22 mining operations along the upper Sacramento River to create about
23 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat.

- 24 • Revising flood control operations to benefit water supply reliability by
25 managing floods more efficiently.

26 CO-2 is similar to CO-1, except Shasta Dam would be raised 18.5 feet instead
27 of 6.5 feet. The additional storage created by the 18.5-foot dam raise would be
28 used to increase water supply reliability, while also improving the ability to
29 meet water temperature objectives for winter-run salmon. The capacity of the
30 reservoir would increase by 636,000 acre-feet to a total of 5.19 MAF, and the
31 existing TCD would be extended to achieve efficient use of the expanded
32 reservoir. This concept also would include revisions to the operational rules for
33 flood control, such that Shasta Dam and Reservoir could be managed more
34 efficiently for water supply reliability (see previous discussion of WSR-1).
35 Suitable areas totaling 150 acres would be chosen for aquatic and floodplain
36 restoration from one or more abandoned gravel mines (see previous discussion
37 of AFS-3).

1 Benefits of CO-2 are described below:

- 2 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – CO-2 would increase the ability of
3 Shasta Dam to make cold-water releases to regulate water temperature
4 in the upper Sacramento River, primarily in dry and critical years.
5 Preliminary analyses estimate that improved water temperature
6 conditions could result in an average annual increase of 1,110 salmon.
7 Habitat restoration would add an additional 150 acres of aquatic and
8 floodplain habitat to the Sacramento River between Keswick and Battle
9 Creek, a critical spawning reach.
- 10 • **Water Supply Reliability** – CO-2 would increase average and dry
11 period water supply reliability to the CVP and SWP systems. This
12 increase corresponds to about 125,000 acre-feet during critical years.
- 13 • **Environmental Restoration, Flood Control, and Hydropower** – The
14 higher water surface elevations in the reservoir would result in a net
15 increase in power generation of about 44 GWh per year. The ability to
16 control floods may increase by a small degree.
- 17 • **Other Benefits** – CO-2 would provide a small benefit to the water-
18 oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake due to the increase in
19 lake surface area, similar to that described previously for concepts
20 incorporating an 18.5-foot raise. The maximum surface area of the lake
21 would increase by about 2,500 acres (8 percent), from 29,600 to about
22 32,100 acres.

23 **CO-3 – Increase Anadromous Fish Flow/Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with**
24 **Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet)**

25 CO-3 addresses both primary planning objectives by raising Shasta Dam by
26 18.5 feet, restoring anadromous fish habitat, and improving flow conditions on
27 the upper Sacramento River.

28 CO-3 includes the following major components:

- 29 • Raising Shasta Dam by 18.5 feet, expanding the cold-water pool, and
30 creating 636,000 acre-feet of additional storage available for both water
31 supply and flow regulation.
- 32 • Acquiring, restoring, and reclaiming one or more inactive gravel
33 mining operations along the upper Sacramento River to create about
34 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat.
- 35 • Revising flood control operations to benefit water supply reliability by
36 managing floods more efficiently.

1 CO-3 is similar to CO-2, except a portion of the additional storage created by
2 the 18.5-foot dam raise would be dedicated to managing flows for winter-run
3 salmon on the upper Sacramento River. The additional storage space could be
4 allocated to fisheries and water supply reliability in many different ways;
5 additional investigation would be needed to assess combinations that could best
6 address the two major objectives. For the purpose of this initial analysis,
7 dedicating about 320,000 acre-feet to increasing minimum flows is believed to
8 be a good estimation of the potential benefits of this concept.

9 Minimum flows on the upper Sacramento River would be increased from 3,250
10 cfs to about 4,200 cfs between October 1 and April 30 (see previous discussion
11 of AFS-2), consistent with the Anadromous Fish Restoration Program. Suitable
12 areas totaling 150 acres would be chosen for restoration from one or more
13 abandoned gravel mines (see previous discussion of AFS-3). Temperature
14 benefits also would be gained by increasing the size of the cold-water pool.

15 The existing TCD would be extended to achieve efficient use of the expanded
16 reservoir. This concept also would include revisions to the operational rules for
17 flood control, such that Shasta Dam and Reservoir could be managed more
18 efficiently for water supply reliability (see previous discussion of WSR-1).

19 Benefits of concept CO-3 are described below:

- 20 • **Anadromous Fish Survival** – CO-3 would benefit anadromous fish by
21 increasing seasonal minimum flows and improving water temperature
22 conditions in the upper Sacramento River, primarily in dry and critical
23 years. Significant additional effort is needed to reliably quantify
24 potential benefits to the anadromous fish population from this concept.
25 However, preliminary analyses estimate that improved water
26 temperature conditions could result in an average annual increase of
27 980 salmon. Habitat restoration and minimum flow increases would
28 add an additional 320 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat to the
29 Sacramento River between Keswick and Battle Creek, a critical
30 spawning reach.
- 31 • **Water Supply Reliability** – CO-3 would increase average and dry
32 period water supply reliability to the CVP and SWP systems. This
33 increase corresponds to about 90,000 acre-feet during critical years.
- 34 • **Environmental Restoration, Flood Control, and Hydropower** –
35 Higher water surface elevations in the reservoir would result in a net
36 increase in power generation of about 61 GWh per year. The ability to
37 control floods may increase to a small degree.

- **Other Benefits** – CO-3 would provide a small benefit to the water-oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake due to the increase in lake surface area, similar to that described previously for concepts incorporating an 18.5-foot raise.

CO-4 – Multipurpose with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet)

CO-4 addresses the primary and secondary planning objectives through raising Shasta Dam 6.5 feet in combination with conjunctive use, habitat restoration, and environmental restoration in the Shasta Lake area and upper Sacramento River.

CO-4 includes the following major components:

- Raising Shasta Dam by 6.5 feet, expanding the cold-water pool, and creating 290,000 acre-feet of additional storage available for water supply reliability.
- Acquiring, restoring, and reclaiming one or more inactive gravel mining operations along the upper Sacramento River to create about 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat.
- Implementing a conjunctive water management program.
- Revising flood control operations to benefit water supply reliability by managing floods more efficiently.
- Constructing additional resident fish habitat in Shasta Lake and along the lower reaches of the Sacramento River, McCloud River, and Squaw Creek.
- Restoring 500 acres of wetland and riparian habitat along the Sacramento River at one or more sites between Redding and Red Bluff.

CO-4 addresses both primary and secondary objectives of the SLWRI through a combination of measures. It would improve anadromous fish survival by increasing the cold water pool in Shasta Reservoir and restoring 150 acres of valuable aquatic and floodplain habitat on the upper Sacramento River. The concept would improve water supply reliability through increasing the storage space in Shasta Reservoir by 290,000 acre-feet, implementing conjunctive water management, and re-operating the reservoir more efficiently for flood control. The secondary objective of environmental restoration also would be addressed through shoreline and tributary habitat improvements around Shasta Lake, and riparian restoration along the upper Sacramento River.

CO-4 includes restoring (1) resident fish habitat in Shasta Lake and (2) riparian habitat at four locations along the lower arms of the Sacramento River, McCloud River, and Squaw Creek (see Figure 4-3).

1
2
3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12
13
14
15
16
17
18
19

20
21
22
23
24
25
26
27
28
29

30
31
32
33
34

35

36
37
38
39
40
41
42
43

This component includes improving shallow, warm-water habitat by installing artificial fish cover, such as anchored complex woody structures and boulders, and planting water-tolerant and/or erosion-resistant vegetation near the mouths of tributaries. These improvements would help provide favorable spawning conditions; juvenile fish leaving the tributaries would benefit from improved adjacent shoreline habitat. Establishing vegetation also could benefit terrestrial species that inhabit the shoreline of Shasta Lake.

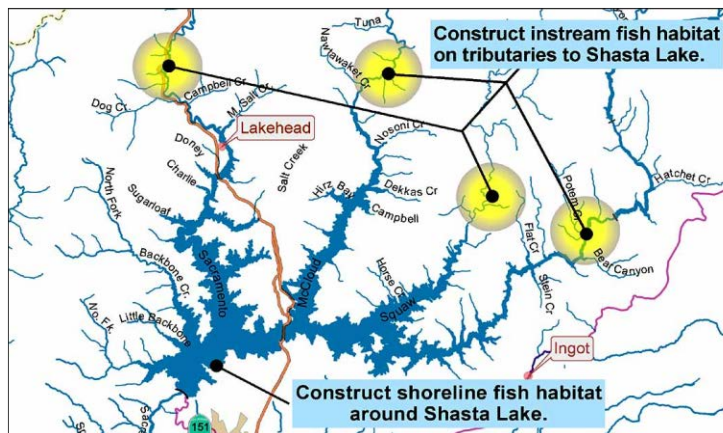


Figure 4-3. Potential Ecosystem Restoration Features in the Shasta Lake Area

This concept also includes improving and restoring instream aquatic habitat along the lower reaches of major tributaries to Shasta Lake using various structural techniques to trap spawning gravel in deficient areas, create pools and riffles, provide instream cover, and improve overall instream habitat conditions. Treatments could include installing gabions, log weirs, boulder weirs, and other anchored structures. Spawning and rearing habitat would be created by installing instream cover, such as large root wads, and drop structures, boulders, gravel traps, and/or logs that cause scouring and help clean gravel. The lower reaches of perennial tributaries to Shasta Lake would be targeted for aquatic restoration because they provide year-round fish habitat.

Also included in CO-4 is acquisition and restoration of wetland and riparian areas along the upper Sacramento River. The location and total area of potential restoration will be the subject of future studies. However, for initial planning purposes, restoration of 500 acres along the Sacramento River between Keswick and Red Bluff is included in this concept.

Major benefits of CO-4 are described below:

- **Anadromous Fish Survival** – CO-4 would benefit anadromous fish by improving water temperature conditions in the upper Sacramento River, primarily in dry and critical years, and increasing the quality and quantity of aquatic habitat. Significant additional effort is needed to reliably quantify potential benefits to the anadromous fish population from this concept. However, preliminary analyses estimate that improved water temperature conditions could result in an average annual increase of 410 salmon. Habitat restoration would add an

1 additional 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat to the Sacramento
2 River between Keswick and Battle Creek, a critical spawning reach.

3 • **Water Supply Reliability** – CO-4 would increase average and dry
4 period water supply reliability to the CVP and SWP systems through
5 reservoir expansion and conjunctive water management. This increase
6 corresponds to about 89,000 acre-feet during critical years.

7 • **Environmental Restoration, Flood Control, and Hydropower** –
8 CO-4 includes restoring resident fish habitat in Shasta Lake and
9 riparian habitat at four locations along the lower arms of the
10 Sacramento River, McCloud River, and Squaw Creek. An additional
11 548 acres of riparian and wetland habitat would be acquired and
12 restored along the upper Sacramento River. The location and total area
13 of restoration in the Shasta Lake and upper Sacramento River areas will
14 be the subject of future studies. Minor increases in hydropower
15 production and flood protection would occur.

16 • **Other Benefits** – CO-4 would provide a small benefit to the water-
17 oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake due to the increase in
18 lake surface area, similar to that described previously for concepts
19 incorporating a 6.5-foot raise.

20 **CO-5 – Multipurpose with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet)**

21 CO-5 addresses both primary planning objectives by raising Shasta Dam 18.5
22 feet in combination with conjunctive water management and anadromous fish
23 habitat restoration.

24 Major plan components of CO-5 include the following:

25 • Raising Shasta Dam by 18.5 feet, expanding the cold-water pool, and
26 creating 636,000 acre-feet of additional storage available for water
27 supply.

28 • Implementing a conjunctive water management program.

29 • Acquiring, restoring, and reclaiming one or more inactive gravel
30 mining operations along the upper Sacramento River to create about
31 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat.

32 • Revising flood control operations to benefit water supply reliability by
33 managing floods more efficiently.

34 • Constructing additional resident fish habitat in Shasta Lake and along
35 the lower reaches of the Sacramento River, McCloud River, and Squaw
36 Creek.

- Restoring 500 acres of wetland and riparian habitat at one or more sites between Redding and Red Bluff on the Sacramento River.

CO-5 is similar to CO-4, except Shasta Dam would be raised 18.5 feet instead of 6.5 feet. The additional storage created by the 18.5-foot dam raise would be used primarily to increase water supply reliability, while also improving the ability to meet water temperature objectives for winter-run salmon during drought years. The capacity of the reservoir would increase by 636,000 acre-feet to a total of 5.19 MAF and the existing TCD would be extended to achieve efficient use of the expanded reservoir. This concept also would include revising the operational rules for flood control, such that Shasta Dam and Reservoir could be managed more efficiently for water supply reliability (see previous discussion of WSR-1). Suitable areas totaling 150 acres would be chosen for restoration from one or more abandoned gravel mines (see previous discussion of AFS-3). As with CO-4, the secondary objectives of environmental restoration would be addressed through shoreline and tributary habitat improvements around Shasta Lake, and 500 acres of riparian restoration along the upper Sacramento River.

Major benefits of CO-5 include the following:

- **Anadromous Fish Survival** – CO-5 would increase the ability of Shasta Dam to make cold-water releases to regulate water temperature in the upper Sacramento River, primarily in dry and critical years. Preliminary analyses estimate that improved temperature conditions could result in an average annual increase of 1,110 salmon. Habitat restoration would add an additional 150 acres of aquatic and floodplain habitat to the Sacramento River between Keswick and Battle Creek, a critical spawning reach.
- **Water Supply Reliability** – CO-5 would increase average and dry period water supply reliability to the CVP and SWP systems through increasing the capacity of Shasta Lake in combination with conjunctive water management. This increase corresponds to about 146,000 acre-feet during critical years.
- **Environmental Restoration, Flood Control, and Hydropower** – Higher water surface elevations in the reservoir would result in a net increase in power generation of about 44 GWh per year. The ability to control floods may increase by a small degree. An additional 500 acres of riparian and wetland habitat would be acquired and restored along the upper Sacramento River between Red Bluff and Redding. The location and total area of restoration in the Shasta Lake and upper Sacramento River areas will be the subject of future studies.
- **Other Benefits** – CO-5 would provide a small benefit to the water-oriented recreation experience at Shasta Lake due to the increase in

1 lake surface area, similar to that described previously for concepts
2 incorporating an 18.5-foot raise. The maximum surface area of the lake
3 would increase by about 2,500 acres (8 percent), from 29,600 to about
4 32,100 acres.

5 **Summary Comparison of Concept Plans**

6 To help focus the plan formulation process and select the most appropriate plans
7 to be carried forward for further development, the concept plans were compared
8 considering two basic planning criteria: effectiveness and efficiency. These are
9 two of four criteria identified in the P&G for water resources planning, in
10 addition to completeness, and acceptability. Below is a description of the two
11 criteria and their application. Table 4-3 shows the resulting comparison of the
12 concept plans based on their relative ability to address each of the criteria. As
13 can be seen in the table and described below, each plan was assigned a relative
14 ranking ranging from very low to very high for each criterion. Each comparison
15 criterion for the concept plans in the table received the same weighting and
16 resulted in an overall relative ranking. This overall ranking was used, along
17 with other information, to determine if a concept plan should be considered
18 further in the plan formulation process in the SLWRI.

19 **Effectiveness**

20 Effectiveness is the extent to which a plan alleviates problems and achieves
21 objectives. For the primary planning objective of anadromous fish survival, two
22 major relative ranking factors were considered: (1) increasing salmon survival
23 (decreased salmon mortality) and (2) increasing habitat for spawning. For water
24 supply reliability, ranking was based on the relative amount of new drought
25 period yield that could be derived from each concept plan. For the secondary
26 planning objectives, three relative ranking factors were considered: (1) whether
27 a plan included ecosystem restoration, (2) potential to affect flood peaks
28 downstream from Keswick Dam, and (3) potential to increase net electric
29 energy. Primary planning objectives received 80 percent of the weight and
30 secondary planning objectives received 20 percent of the weight for this
31 criterion.

32 As indicated in Table 4-3, concept plans with the greatest effectiveness in
33 meeting planning objectives are WSR-3, CO-2, and CO-5. This is primarily
34 because, of the 12 concept plans, these three would generally result in the
35 greatest combined contribution to both primary planning objectives. Each AFS-
36 focused plan, when compared to other concept plans, ranks low primarily
37 because the AFS plans would provide limited benefits to other planning
38 objectives. The same conclusions apply to the larger sizes of raising Shasta
39 Dam.

40

Table 4-3. Summary Comparison of Concept Plans

| Concept Plans | Comparison Criteria | | Identified Status and Relative Ranking |
|---|---|---|--|
| | Effectiveness | Efficiency | |
| AFS-1 – Increase Cold-Water Assets with Shasta Operating Pool Raise (6.5 feet) | Significantly effective in helping benefit anadromous fish survival. Does not significantly contribute to water supply reliability if all storage is dedicated to fisheries purposes. Incidental contribution to flood control and hydropower objectives. | Because contributes to only one primary planning objective (anadromous fish survival), results in greatest cost for that purpose. | Enlarging Shasta only for increasing the cold-water pool is identified for further consideration as a stand-alone plan. Although this plan addressed only one primary planning objective, if considered in a larger plan (allocation of space), this plan might be found feasible. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Low</i> | <i>Moderate</i> |
| AFS-2 – Increase Minimum Anadromous Fish Flow with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet) | Relatively low increase in fish habitat with uncertain benefit to increased survival. Major trade-off in water supply reliability for relatively minor increased minimum flows. Incidental contribution to flood control and hydropower objectives. | Very high unit costs for increased fish habitat. Also, very high unit cost for water supply reliability. High costs due to dedicating storage space to increasing minimum winter/spring flows with little contribution to water supply. | Enlarging Shasta primarily to increase winter/spring river flows for anadromous fish is not identified for further consideration as a stand-alone plan. Very high costs for marginal increases in meeting objectives. Same conclusion for any sized project with similar component measures. However, potential operational changes to increase fish survival are identified for further study as part of any plan considered. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Low</i> | <i>Low</i> | <i>Low</i> |
| AFS-3 – Increase Minimum Anadromous Fish Flow and Restore Aquatic Habitat with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet) | Similar to AFS-2. Increased effectiveness in anadromous fish habitat through gravel mine restoration. | Similar to AFS-2. Very high unit costs to meet primary planning objective. | Similar to AFS-2, not identified for further consideration as a stand-alone plan. High costs for marginal increases in meeting objectives. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Low</i> | <i>Low</i> | <i>Low</i> |
| WSR-1 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet) | Relatively low potential to effectively increase water supply reliability and improve fish survival. Incidental contribution to flood control and hydropower objectives. | High cost-efficiency. Unit cost for water supply reliability highly competitive with other new sources, including potential surface water storage projects. | Enlarging Shasta primarily for water supply reliability from sizes 6.5 feet to about 18.5 feet is identified for further development primarily because (1) consistent with goals of the 2000 CALFED ROD, (2) high cost-efficiency compared to other new sources, and (3) provides significant incidental benefits to anadromous fish and secondary study objectives. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Low</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Moderate</i> |

Table 4-3. Summary Comparison of Concept Plans (contd.)

| Concept Plans | Comparison Criteria | | Identified Status and Relative Ranking |
|---|--|---|---|
| | Effectiveness | Efficiency | |
| WSR-2 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet) | Moderate potential to effectively address primary planning objectives. Significant contribution to water supply reliability. Incidental contribution to flood control and hydropower objectives. | Very high cost-efficiency. Superior to all other known new sources, including potential surface water storage projects. | Identified for further development for reasons similar to WSR-1. Also, enlarging Shasta to maximum extent possible without major relocations can maximize cost-efficiency. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Very High</i> | <i>High to Very High</i> |
| WSR-3 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (High Level) | High potential to significantly address primary planning objectives. Significantly addresses water supply reliability. Can contribute significantly to cold-water salmon resources. Provides major opportunities to address secondary planning objectives. | Very high implementation cost. Relatively high unit cost for new water supplies. | Not Identified for further consideration at this time. High social and environmental impacts in Shasta Lake area. Very high implementation cost. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>High</i> | <i>Low</i> | <i>Low</i> |
| WSR-4 – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet) and Conjunctive Water Management | Similar to WSR-2 with increased contribution to water supply reliability through conjunctive use management. However, significantly diminishes potential increased fish survival benefits. | High cost-efficiency for water supply reliability. Estimated to result in the lowest unit cost of all plans considered and of all other known potential water supply reliability projects. | Enlarging Shasta to maximum extent possible without major relocations and including conjunctive water management component is not identified for further development. Although cost-efficient, it diminishes fish survival benefits to achieve additional water supply reliability. No known active support for a conjunctive use component. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Low</i> | <i>Very High</i> | <i>Moderate to High</i> |
| CO-1 – Increase Anadromous Fish Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet) | Potential to address primary planning objectives with emphasis on spawning habitat restoration. Contributes to cold-water salmon resources and reduced mortality. Includes features to increase reservoir reoperation for flood control and water supply. | Unit cost for water supply reliability competitive with other new sources, including potential surface water storage projects. High potential for efficient salmon habitat restoration along the upper river. | Not identified for further consideration as a stand-alone plan. Major components are redundant with WSR-1 and CO-2, which are recommended for further development. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Moderate</i> |

Table 4-3. Summary Comparison of Concept Plans (contd.)

| Concept Plans | Comparison Criteria | | Identified Status and Relative Ranking |
|--|--|---|--|
| | Effectiveness | Efficiency | |
| CO-2 – Increase Anadromous Fish Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet) | Similar to CO-1, but with increased potential to address primary and several secondary planning objectives due to increased storage space. | High cost-efficiency. Unit cost for water supply reliability highly competitive with other new sources, including potential surface water storage projects. High potential for efficient salmon habitat restoration along the upper river. | Enlarging Shasta to the maximum extent possible (without major relocations), and including features to increase anadromous fish habitat is identified for further development. Recommended primarily because this plan is (1) consistent with goals of the CALFED ROD, (2) highly cost efficient, and (3) addresses most of the planning objectives. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>High</i> | <i>High</i> | <i>High</i> |
| CO-3 – Increase Anadromous Fish Flow/Habitat and Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet) | Low to moderate potential to effectively address primary objectives. Potential to significantly benefit salmon resources through restoring fish habitat. Provides major opportunities to address secondary objectives. | Reduced cost-efficiency for water supply reliability due to dedicated increased minimum flows. | For reasons similar to AFS-2 and AFS-3, enlarging Shasta with significant storage space dedicated to increased winter/spring flows for anadromous fish is not identified for further consideration as a stand-alone plan at this time. Very high costs for marginal increases in meeting objectives. However, potential operational changes to increase fish survival are recommended for further study as part of any plan considered. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Moderate</i> |
| CO-4 – Multipurpose with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet) | Moderate potential to address primary planning objectives, with emphasis on spawning habitat restoration. Contributes to cold-water salmon resources and reduced mortality. Includes features to increase reservoir reoperation for flood control and water supply. Includes features to help restore ecosystem resources along the upper Sacramento River and near Shasta Lake. | Most cost-efficient plan for a 6.5-foot dam raise. Moderate potential for efficient salmon habitat restoration along upper river. High potential for helping restore ecosystem resources along the upper Sacramento River and near Shasta Lake. | Not identified for further consideration as a stand-alone plan with a 6.5-foot raise, primarily due to reduced effectiveness and efficiency. Major components are redundant with WSR-1 and CO-5, which are recommended for further development. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Moderate</i> | <i>Moderate</i> |

Table 4-3. Summary Comparison of Concept Plans (contd.)

| Concept Plans | Comparison Criteria | | Identified Status and Relative Ranking |
|--|---|---|---|
| | Effectiveness | Efficiency | |
| CO-5 – Multipurpose with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet) | High potential to address primary planning objectives with emphasis on spawning habitat restoration. Significantly contributes to cold-water salmon resources and reduced mortality. Includes features to increase reservoir reoperation for flood control and water supply. Includes features to help restore ecosystem resources along the upper Sacramento River and near Shasta Lake. | High cost-efficiency for water supply reliability. High potential for efficient salmon habitat restoration along upper river. High potential for helping restore ecosystem resources along the upper Sacramento River and near Shasta Lake. | Enlarging Shasta to the maximum extent possible (without major relocations), and including features for conjunctive water management, anadromous fish habitat, and ecosystem restoration is identified for further development. Recommended primarily because this plan is (1) consistent with goals of the 2000 CALFED ROD, (2) highly cost-efficient, and (3) addresses all planning objectives. |
| <i>Relative Rank</i> | <i>High</i> | <i>High</i> | <i>High</i> |

Key:
 AFS = Anadromous Fish Survival
 CALFED = CALFED Bay-Delta Program
 CO = Combined Objective
 ROD = Record of Decision
 WSR = Water Supply Reliability

1 **Anadromous Fish Survival** This subcriterion is the relative ability of a plan
2 to help increase the survival of anadromous fish populations in the Sacramento
3 River primarily upstream from the Red Bluff. Included in Table 4-4 is a
4 preliminary estimate of the average annual increase in Chinook salmon
5 populations upstream from the Red Bluff only, resulting from the increase in the
6 cold-water pool in Shasta Reservoir for three dam enlargements and reservoir
7 operations.

8 For dam raises of 6.5 feet, the greatest benefit to fish survival would occur with
9 AFS-1 because all additional space would be dedicated to the goal of increasing
10 the cold-water pool. However, AFS-1 would not significantly contribute to the
11 other planning objectives. The next greatest increase in fish survival with a dam
12 raise of 6.5 feet would occur equally with WSR-1, CO-1, and CO-4. The least
13 apparent benefit in increased salmon survival would occur with AFS-2 and
14 AFS-3. This is because increasing minimum flows on the upper Sacramento
15 River would deplete the cold-water pool, which may be needed later in the year
16 for temperature regulation during the warm summer months. Also for these two
17 concept plans, the potential to benefit other objectives would be low. It is
18 expected that similar relationships would occur for larger dam raises but with
19 increasing effectiveness for anadromous fish survival.

20 As mentioned, AFS-3, CO-1, CO-2, CO-3, CO-4, and CO-5 all included
21 restoration of one or more abandoned gravel mines along the upper Sacramento
22 River downstream from Keswick Dam for anadromous fish survival benefits.
23 Recent evaluations related to the use of the SALMOD model have indicated that
24 restoring these areas may not result in a significant benefit to anadromous fish.
25 Concerns have been expressed ranging from a low likelihood that these areas
26 could be effectively used to increase spawning and rearing habitats to the
27 likelihood for increased predation. Further, during public and stakeholder
28 outreach meetings in late 2005 held primarily for environmental scoping
29 purposes, there was little to no interest expressed for acquisition and
30 restoring these areas. At this time, restoration of abandoned gravel mines is not
31 included in further plan formulation activities for the SLWRI.

32 The estimated difference in increased fish survival benefits between WSR-2 or
33 CO-2 and WSR-4 or CO-5 (dam raises of 18.5 feet) is because including a
34 conjunctive management component in the concept plans would lessen the
35 amount of cold-water available during critical periods compared to operations
36 without the conjunctive management component. Although the relative
37 increase in water supply yield is sizeable, so are the benefits forgone for
38 anadromous fish survival when a conjunctive use component is included. The
39 greatest benefit to anadromous fish from an increase in the cold-water pool
40 would be with WSR-3 (dam raise of 202.5 feet). It is believed, however, that
41 this plan could have adverse impacts not yet defined that would discount the
42 apparent increase in salmon survival.

Table 4-4. Summary of Estimated Costs and Benefits for Concept Plans

| Item | Concept Plans | | | | | | | | | | | |
|--|--------------------------------|------------|------------|--------------------------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|--------------------------|-------------|-------------|------------|-------------|
| | Anadromous Fish Survival Focus | | | Water Supply Reliability Focus | | | | Combined Objective Focus | | | | |
| | AFS-1 | AFS-2 | AFS-3 | WSR-1 | WSR-2 | WSR-3 | WSR-4 | CO-1 | CO-2 | CO-3 | CO-4 | CO-5 |
| Raise Shasta Dam (feet) | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 6.5 | 18.5 | 202.5 | 18.5 | 6.5 | 18.5 | 18.5 | 6.5 | 18.5 |
| Total Increased Storage (1,000 acre-feet) ¹ | 290 | 290 | 290 | 290 | 636 | 9340 | 636 | 290 | 636 | 636 | 290 | 636 |
| Accomplishments | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| Anadromous Fish | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| - Spawning Habitat - Restore Gravel Mines (acres) | - | - | 150 | - | - | - | - | 150 | 150 | 150 | 150 | 150 |
| - Minimum Flows (acres) | - | 170 | 170 | - | - | - | - | - | - | 170 | - | - |
| - Average Annual Salmon Increase (1,000 fish) ² | 860 | 370 | 370 | 410 | 1,110 | 10,620 | 1,020 | 410 | 1,110 | 980 | 410 | 1,020 |
| Water Supply Reliability (1,000 acre-feet/year) ³ | 0 | 20 | 20 | 72 | 125 | 703 | 146 | 72 | 125 | 90 | 89 | 146 |
| Ecosystem Restoration (acres) | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | - | 548 | 548 |
| Hydropower Generation (GWh/yr) ⁴ | 51 | 32 | 32 | 15 | 44 | 2,254 | 44 | 15 | 44 | 61 | 12 | 44 |
| Flood Damage Reduction | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes | Yes |
| Construction Cost (\$millions)⁵ | 282 | 282 | 292 | 282 | 408 | 5,250 | 459 | 292 | 418 | 418 | 356 | 483 |

Notes:

¹ Early evaluations estimated the storage capacity increase with a 6.5-foot raise at 290,000 acre-feet as indicated in Table 4-2

² Average Annual Salmon Increase numbers are from Initial Alternatives Information Report (simulated using SALMOD), June 2004. Updated modeling results can be found in the Modeling Appendix.

³ Approximate increased water supply yield from the 2004 Initial Alternatives Information Report simulated with CalSim-II based on drought year conditions with Banks Pumping capacity at 6,680 cfs. At 8,500 cfs pumping capacity, yield is about 18 percent greater.

⁴ Preliminary estimate based on 2003 conditions.

⁵ Based on preliminary designs and cost estimates at 2003 price levels.

Key:

AFS = anadromous fish survival

CO = combined objective

GWh/yr = gigawatt hours per year

WSR = water supply reliability

1 **Water Supply Reliability** This subcriterion is the relative potential of a plan
2 to help increase water supplies and water supply reliability to the CVP and SWP
3 to help meet current and future water demands, with a primary focus on
4 modifying Shasta Dam and Reservoir. Included in Table 4-4 is an estimate of
5 the increase in drought period water supply reliability for the concept plans. As
6 can be seen, the increase in water supply reliability ranges from about 20,000
7 acre-feet per year for dam raise of 6.5 feet (including dedication of increased
8 storage to increasing spring fish flows) to over 700,000 acre-feet per year for a
9 dam raise of 202.5 feet. The exception is concept plan AFS-1, which would
10 provide only an incidental amount of water supply yield.

11 **Ecosystem Restoration** This subcriterion is a measure of the ability of a plan
12 to address the secondary planning objective of ecosystem restoration. Through
13 pursuit of the primary planning objectives, significant potential is created to
14 implement features to help conserve and restore ecosystem resources, especially
15 in the Shasta Lake area.

16 **Flood Control** This subcriterion includes a measure of the ability of a plan to
17 reduce flood damages along the upper Sacramento River near Redding. Each of
18 the concept plans has the potential to incidentally provide increased flood
19 control opportunities. However, for any of the plans other than WSR-3, this
20 possibility is very small, unless the projects were operated (at least in part)
21 specifically for that purpose. However, there does not appear to be sufficient
22 residual need for an additional flood control increment in Shasta Reservoir.

23 This subcriterion also addresses increases in public safety at Shasta Dam. All of
24 the concept plans include routing the PMF from the top of conservation space in
25 Shasta Reservoir. As mentioned, this results in additional features at Shasta
26 Dam and around Shasta Reservoir to more safely accommodate extremely rare
27 and large flood events such as the PMF.

28 **Hydropower** This subcriterion is a measure of the ability of a plan, through
29 pursuit of the primary planning objectives, to help increase hydropower
30 capabilities at Shasta Dam. Each of the plans incidentally provides increased
31 opportunities for hydropower generation. From Table 4-4, based on 2003
32 conditions, it is estimated that increases in hydropower generation would range
33 from about 15 GWh/year for WSR-1 to over 2,200 GWh/year for WSR-3 (not
34 including loss of generation at the Pit 7 Dam).

35 **Efficiency**

36 Efficiency is the measure of how efficiently a plan alleviates identified
37 problems while realizing specified objectives consistent with protecting the
38 Nation's environment. Concept plans ranking highest for this criterion are
39 WSR-2, WSR-4, CO-2, and CO-5. This is primarily because each of these
40 plans provides a significant increase in water supply reliability at a relatively
41 low unit cost while significantly contributing to other planning objectives. Each
42 of the AFS-focused concept plans and WSR-3 rank low. For the AFS-focused

1 plans, this is primarily because the increased storage space would be dedicated
2 to either increasing the cold-water pool or instream flows. These plans would
3 provide very little economic benefit to the other planning objectives. However,
4 plans could be simulated to dedicate some of the storage space to water supply
5 and some to anadromous fish, which would result in lowered traditional
6 economic benefits but increased fisheries benefits.

7 **Anadromous Fish Survival** Under the efficiency criterion, this is the measure
8 of the potential for a plan to increase the long-term survivability of anadromous
9 fish in the upper Sacramento River at the lowest incremental cost. Through use
10 of SALMOD and by assessment of other features, it is estimated that the most
11 efficient way to significantly and effectively increase the survivability of
12 anadromous fish in the upper Sacramento River is through increases in the cold-
13 water pool in Shasta Lake that would result in cooler water releases during
14 critical periods of the year. Other ways of helping improve the fishery are
15 included in several concept plans such as increased winter/spring minimum
16 flows and habitat restoration. These measures were found to be less effective
17 and had a higher uncertainty for success than increasing the cold-water pool in
18 the lake.

19 ***Water Reliability Unit Cost***

20 This is a measure of the potential for a plan to increase the reliability of the
21 CVP and SWP by developing a reliable additional increment of water at the
22 lowest unit cost (dollars per acre-foot of drought period yield). It is estimated
23 that concept plans WSR-2, WSR-4, CO-2, and CO-5 would result in the lowest
24 unit water costs compared to the other plans considered. Excluding AFS-1,
25 concept plans that would result in the highest unit cost for increased water
26 supply reliability are AFS-2, AFS-3, WSR-1, and WSR-3.

27 ***Secondary Planning Objective Costs***

28 This is a measure of the potential for a plan to also include benefits for
29 ecosystem restoration, flood control, public safety, and hydropower with the
30 lowest incidental and economically justified additional cost. All dam raise
31 scenarios provide some amount of increased seasonal storage space that can
32 contribute to increased efficiency in flood operations and a higher head for
33 power generation. For public safety, all plans would include added features to
34 increase the certainty of Shasta Dam and Reservoir safely passing the PMF.
35 The relative efficiency of providing flood control and hydropower increases
36 with larger reservoirs and higher dam raises. The efficiency of a plan in
37 providing ecosystem restoration relative to enlarging Shasta Dam and Reservoir
38 will require additional evaluation.

39 ***Likelihood for Federal Interest***

40 Potential for Federal interest exists for each of the concept plans, providing the
41 plans are economically feasible and a non-Federal sponsor(s) is capable and
42 willing to share in implementing the cost for a potential project. For those plans
43 with high costs for a specific unit of benefit to the anadromous fishery,

1 ecosystem, or water supply reliability, potential for Federal interest is greatly
2 diminished because of the likely lack of economic feasibility. This is believed
3 to be especially true for concept plans similar to AFS-1, AFS-2, AFS-3, WSR-3,
4 and CO-3.

5 ***CALFED Consistency***

6 This is a measure of the relationship of the plan to the overall goals and
7 objectives of the CALFED ROD, or other ongoing projects and programs. To
8 rank high, a plan must neither preclude nor enhance the potential for
9 development of other projects and programs. All of the concept plans, with the
10 exception of AFS-1 and WSR-3, are believed to be fundamentally consistent
11 with the CALFED ROD.

12 **Concept Alternatives Carried Forward**

13 After comparing each concept plan to the planning criteria above, five plans
14 initially appeared superior in Table 4-3 and in supporting analyses.
15 Accordingly, these five plans and the required No-Action plan were
16 recommended for further development in the comprehensive plans phase of the
17 SLWRI. However, although WSR-4 was initially carried forward as an
18 alternative, subsequent analysis of the conjunctive use component indicated
19 tradeoffs between conjunctive use water supply benefits and critical gains in
20 fisheries benefits. The resulting reduction in benefits to fisheries operations in
21 dry and critical years was deemed unacceptable in terms of meeting primary
22 project planning objectives. Thus, WSR-4 and the conjunctive use component
23 of CO-5 were eliminated from further consideration. CO-2 was also initially
24 carried forward, but was subsequently eliminated from further consideration
25 because continued evaluation concluded that restoration of existing gravel
26 mines would have a low likelihood of successfully benefiting salmon resources.
27 Concept plans recommended for further development include the following:

- 28
- No-Action
 - **WSR-1** – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (6.5 feet)
 - **WSR-2** – Increase Water Supply Reliability with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet)
 - **CO-5** – Multipurpose with Shasta Enlargement (18.5 feet)
- 34

1
2

This page left blank intentionally.